

**Bit by Bit**  
كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية



PARENTS' GUIDE  
**CONNECT**

**الصف السادس الابتدائي**  
**الفصل الدراسي الأول**



**6th**

**PRIMARY SIX**  
**FIRST TERM**

**دار غزة**  
للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع  
ghazzahouse@gmail.com



**2025**



# Contents

## Part 1

- Punctuation
- Writing Skills
- Specification for Six Year Primary
- Let's remember!

## Part 2

### Theme 1 I discover myself

- Unit 1 Green cities
- Unit 2 We are all different
- Unit 3 Vacation plans
- Review 1

### Theme 2 Myself and others

- Unit 4 Celebrate good times
- Unit 5 Amazing journeys
- Unit 6 Taking care
- Review 2



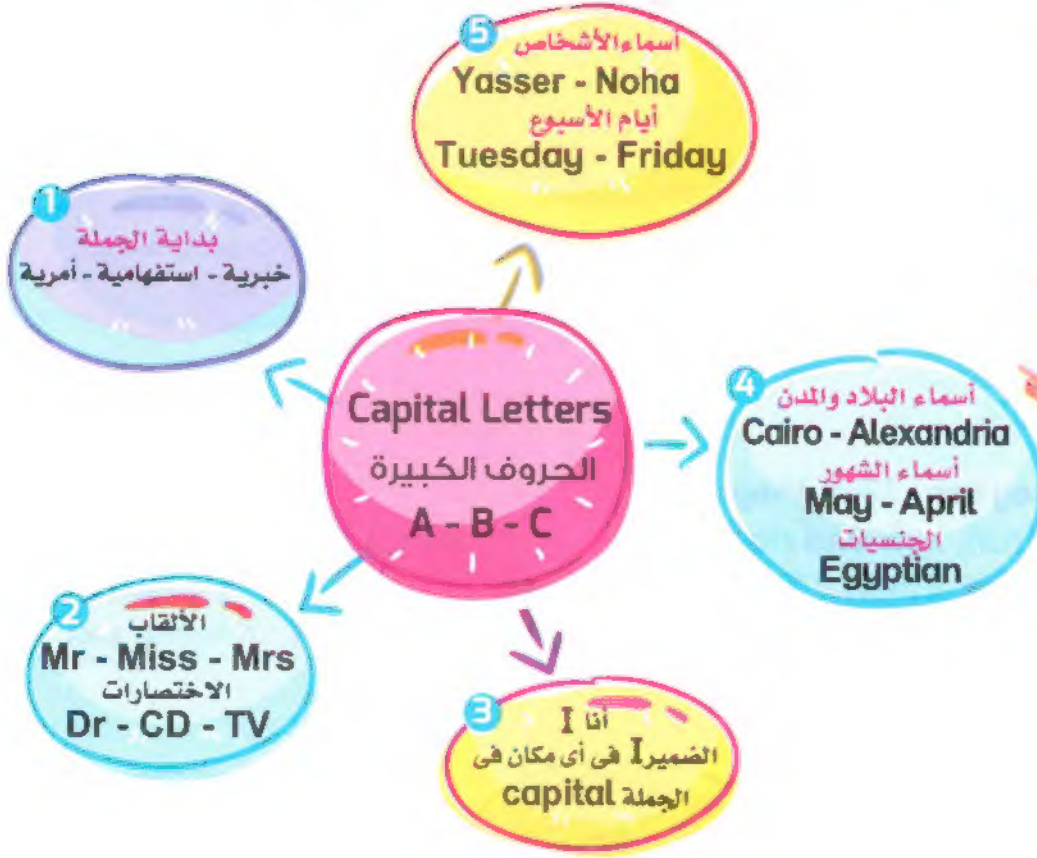
## Part 3

- Listening scripts



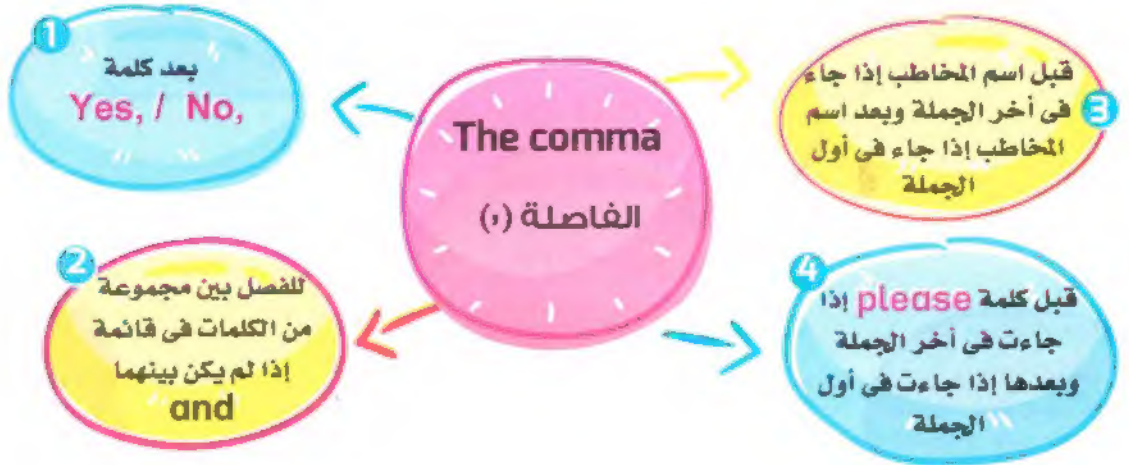
# Punctuation

علامات الترقيم



## Examples:

1. **S**ameh is a teacher. (جملة خبرية)
2. **C**lose your book. (جملة أمرية)
3. **W**here's your house? (جملة استفهامية)
4. **I** want some water. **I**'m thirsty. (الضمير)
5. We visited **C**airo in **M**arch. (أسماء مدن وشهور)
6. **M**r Tamer plays tennis on **W**ednesday. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)



## Examples:

- Yes, they are. / No, they aren't. (بعد Yes, / No,)
- I want fruit, fish and rice. (للفصل بين مجموعة كلمات في قائمة)
- Come here, Eman. / Eman, come here. (اسم مخاطب)
- Give me this book, please. / Please, give me this book. (كلمة Please)



## Examples:

1. We are friends. (جملة خبرية)
2. Close the window. (جملة أمرية)
3. How are you, Karim? (جملة استفهامية)
4. Hello! Nabil. (علامة تعجب)

# Writing Skills



## How to write a paragraph كيف تكتب فقرة انشائية

### كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة موضوع من ٥٠ كلمة من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

• حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن نتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها في اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:

#### أولاً ترتيب الجملة

| 1                | 2  | 3   |
|------------------|--|---|
| فاعل             | فعل  | تكملة الجملة  |
| اسم شخص<br>Amged | مضارع بسيط / مستمر<br>is going / go / goes | ظرف مكان - زمان / صفة / حال<br>home / yesterday<br>happy / well |
| مكان<br>Garden   | ماضي بسيط / مستمر<br>was doing / did       |   |
| شيء<br>Car       |  |   |

#### ثانياً صيغ الجمل المختلفة

صفة + verb to be + فاعل

He is excited.

وظيفة + verb to be + فاعل

Gamal is a doctor.

مكان + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

She went to the party.

زمن + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

We are ready on Sunday.

مفعول + فعل + فاعل

I help her.

الساعة + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل

We get up at 7 o'clock.

1 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة انشائية من ٥٠ كلمة عن:

#### Guiding questions

- 1- When's your birthday?
- 2- Where's your birthday?

#### Your birthday party

Yesterday was my birthday. I made a big party at my garden. I have a nice garden around my house. My mother prepared some sandwiches. My father bought a chocolate cake. I liked it very much. My friends came to the party. We sang songs and danced. We played video games and football. It was a nice day.



## How to write an email كيف تكتب بريد الإلكتروني

**To:** البريد الإلكتروني الخاص بالمرسل إليه:

**From:** البريد الإلكتروني الخاص بالراسل:

**Subject:** موضوع أو عنوان الرسالة:

**Dear + اسم المرسل إليه ,**  
How are you? I want to tell you about

تكتب هنا جمل عادية مثل الفقرة الإنشائية

See you soon.

اسم الراسل

- اتبع الخطوات الآتية لكتابة بريد إلكتروني بشكل منظم:

١- في السطر الأول من بريدك الإلكتروني أبدأ بكلمة "Dear" أو "Hi" ثم اكتب اسم المرسل إليه:

٢- في السطر الثاني أبدأ بـ: "I'm happy to write to you."

"Thanks for writing to me."

٣- أسأل عن أحوال صديقك بـ:

"How are you?" / "How are things?" / "How's life?"

٤- اذكر سبب إرسالك للبريد الإلكتروني ولماذا كتبت:

I want to tell you about

٥- يجب أن يحتوي بريدك الإلكتروني على فكرة واحدة فقط وليس أكثر من فكرة:

٦- عند الكتابة إلى صديق يمكنك استخدام لغة غير رسمية مثل كلمات: "awesome" أو "cool"

٧- قم بإنهاء بريدك الإلكتروني بعبارات مثل: "Write soon." أو "See you soon."

أو "By for you now." أو "Hope to hear from you soon."

### لاحظ

بعض التحويلات الآتية عند كتابة البريد الإلكتروني:

١- إذا كان في السؤال كلمة her أو him أو them قم بتحويلها في الإيميل إلى كلمة you.

٢- إذا كان في السؤال كلمة your نحولها إلى كلمة my.

٣- إذا كان في السؤال كلمة you نحولها إلى كلمة I.





## How to write a blog كيف تكتب تدوينة

- 1 Write a blog of about FIFTY (50) words to your friend about your new school. Your name is Maha:

### Maha's blog

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

١- تاريخ اليوم

Tuesday, 5<sup>th</sup> August

٢- عنوان الموضوع

#### My new school

٣- مقدمة افتتاحية

Dear Diary,

It was a nice day today. I went to a new school near my apartment.

My father had a new job in the Sixth of October City so, we moved to a new apartment. At first I was sad because I left my friends. My new school was bigger than my old school. I made new friends. They welcomed me and showed me my classroom. The teachers were kind and nice. I think that it's a special school. 😊



٥- الصور



٤- رموز تعبيرية

### - خطوات كتابة التدوينة:

- ١- قم بكتابة تاريخ اليوم عند بداية كتابة يومية جديدة.
- ٢- ثم قم بكتابة عنوان مناسب للموضوع الذي سنتحدث عنه.
- ٣- ابدأ اليومية بكتابة "Dear Diary".
- ٤- قم بوصف الأماكن والأحداث التي مرت عليك خلال اليوم بلغة غير رسمية.
- ٥- قم بوصف ما شعرت به خلال اليوم.
- ٦- يجب أن تتضمن اليومية على بعض الضمائر الشخصية مثل "I" أو "my".
- ٧- قم باستخدام بعض الصور المرئية والرموز التعبيرية لتوصيل الفكرة بشكل سريع.
- ٨- أعط رأيك في الموضوع الذي نتحدث عنه باستخدام بعض العبارات مثل:  
"I think that ....." أو "In my opinion....."



## How to write a diary entry كيف تكتب مذكرة يومية

### - خطوات كتابة المذكرة اليومية

- A diary has features that are different from other types of text:

- تحتوي المذكرة اليومية على سمات تختلف عن الأنواع الأخرى من النصوص:

- It usually has short paragraphs, each one about what happened on a single day.  
- إنها عادة تحتوي على فقرات قصيرة ، كل واحدة تدور حول ما حدث في يوم واحد.
- It is usually written in an informal style and uses first person pronouns (I, we, my, etc.).  
- تكتب عادة بأسلوب غير رسمي وتستخدم ضمائر الشخص الأول ( المتكلم ) ( أنا ، نحن ، ملكي ، إلخ).
- It usually describes the writer's thoughts, feelings, and opinions.  
- تصف عادة أفكار الكاتب ومشاعره وآرائه.
- It usually describes people, places, and experiences.  
- تصف عادة الأشخاص والأماكن والتجارب.

### مثال لمذكرة يومية:

Dear Diary,

Today while I was cleaning my cupboard, I found some old pictures of me and my sisters. We were laughing a lot in this picture. I believe that it should be some really funny moment. Another funny picture, when I was hiding and eating chocolate from my father's pocket so that I don't have to share with anyone.

A picture of us was also there. It was on my sister's birthday. Some pictures made me laugh and some made me cry.

Gameela

## Tips to answer the comprehension questions

### إرشادات للإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

#### أولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد (multiple-choice)

1 قد يطلب منك تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) في النص من خلال صيغ مثل:

- The main idea of the passage is.....
- The passage is mainly about.....

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.

#### كيف تجد الفكرة الرئيسية في النص

- هي النقطة الأساسية التي يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.

- تكون جملة وليست سؤالاً.

- الجمل الأخرى في النص تعطي تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.

- غالباً تكون في أول جملة أو آخر جملة في النص.

#### لاحظ المثال الآتي

- ما باللون الأحمر هي الفكرة الرئيسية وما باللون الأزرق هي التفاصيل عنها.

Yesterday, I got **a new coat**. My **new coat** is **blue and red**. My coat is **very nice** and keeps me warm. On the back, there is a **picture of a snow man**. I will wear **my coat** to school.

2 قد يقوم واضع الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات في جملة معينة في القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد يقول: الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى ....

- The underlined word '.....' refers to .....

#### ثانياً: أسئلة (open-ended) استفسامية

3 قد يطلب واضع الامتحان منك تلخيصاً (summarize) لأحد الفقرات في النص في جملة واحدة بالصيغة الآتية:

- Summarize the first / second / third paragraph (into one sentence).

#### كيف تلخص فقرة إلى جملة أو أكثر

1- حدد اسم الشخص أو الشئ أو الحيوان الأساسي بالفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها

2- حدد أهم شئ يخص ذلك الشخص أو الشئ أو الحيوان واستخدم أهم الأفعال بالفقرة للتعبير عن ذلك وممكن

استخدام أفعال أخرى تؤدي نفس المعنى.

3- استبعد الأفكار الفرعية أو الغير أساسية أو المعلومات الأقل أهمية

4- اكتب الفكرة الأساسية في حدود خمسة كلمات أو حسب ما يطلب

1- Summarize the first paragraph of the text in two lines

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids, temples and other monuments. It is a wonderful visit for them. Tourists also come to see the wonderful natural world such as the desert and the Red Sea.

تتبع الخطوات السابقة:

١- الفقرة تتعلق بشكل أساسي بالسائحين **tourists**

٢- أهم ما يحصهم هو زيارة مصر والأماكن السياحية بها والأفعال التي تعبر عن ذلك **come see visit**

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة

Summary

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids and the wonderful natural world such as the Red Sea.

2- Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence

My father enjoys playing football with his friends. He believes in doing sports and teaches us the same. He wants me to be clever at school. I want to make him feel proud of me one day.

١- أهم شخص **My father**

٢- وأهم شيء يخصه أنه يؤمن بممارسة الرياضة ويريدني أن أتفوق في دراستي.

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤ - قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة.

Summary

My father thinks that doing sports is very important and he wants me to be clever at school.



# Specifications for Sixth Year Primary

مواصفات الصف السادس الابتدائي ٢٠٢٤ - ٢٠٢٥

Marks: 30

Time: One hour and a half

## A- Listening (6 Marks)

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d: (6 Marks)

A text about **SIXTY (60)** words related to the Set Books is provided. Learners are asked to listen to the text and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. (One mark and a half each)

## B- Reading (13 Marks)

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 Marks)

Learners are given **FOUR (4)** MCQs vocabulary items based on the Set Books. They are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

(One mark each)

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (4 Marks)

An unseen text from **SIXTY (60)** to **SEVENTY (70)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE** of the **FIVE (5)** words given. The first sentence should be written in full. (One mark each)

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5 Marks)

An unseen literary or informational text from **NINTY (90)** to **ONE HUNDRED (100)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for Primary **SIX**. Learners are asked to answer:

**A. THREE (3) MCQs** with **FOUR (4)** options; each dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

(One mark each)



**B: TWO (2) open ended** questions dealing with **TWO (2)** of the following reading comprehension skills:

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

**(One mark each)**

---

### **C- Writing (10 Marks)**

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3 Marks)**

**THREE (3)** scrambled statements of not less than **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Learners are asked to order the words to form correct sentences.

**(One mark each)**

**6 Read and write the correct form of the words(s) between brackets: (2 Marks)**

**TWO (2)** structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets.

**(One mark each)**

**7 Punctuate the following: (One mark)**

**ONE (1)** simple statement (sentence or question) of about **SIX (6)** words with **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks each are provided (**Capital Letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma**). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly.

**(Half a mark each)**

**8 Write a text of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (5 Marks)**

Learners are asked to write not less than **FIFTY (50)** words related to a specific topic using **TWO (2)** given guiding elements that can be phrases, questions, fact file, tables ....etc. in **ONE (1)** of the following writing forms:

- Paragraph      - Email      - Blog      - Text message      - Diary

**(One mark for relevance of ideas – One mark for vocabulary- One mark for grammar- One mark for spelling- One mark for punctuation)**

# Let's remember!

انظر واكتب،

1



potatoes

2



angoe

3



l m ns

4



ba a as

5



gr es

6



ca ots

7



on ns

8



im s

9



conuts

2

اكتب الكلمات من التمرين (١) في المجموعة الصحيحة. ثم استمع وتأكد وقل،

| Fruit   | Vegetables |
|---------|------------|
| bananas | carrots    |
|         |            |
|         |            |
|         |            |



Find and circle seven more words for sports:

أوجد وضع دائرة حول سبع كلمات إضافية تعبر عن الرياضة :

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| k | a | r | a | t | e | y | u | i | o | p | l | k |
| u | f | d | s | a | s | w | i | m | m | i | n | g |
| n | o | i | u | y | q | t | r | e | w | q | m | n |
| g | s | d | f | g | u | h | j | k | l | b | v | s |
| f | o | o | t | b | a | l | l | x | c | z | n | a |
| u | f | j | e | r | s | x | m | t | r | s | w | i |
| j | o | r | n | t | h | a | n | d | b | a | l | l |
| y | p | h | n | b | d | f | t | y | o | d | p | i |
| e | r | t | i | y | u | i | o | p | k | e | j | n |
| s | a | z | s | x | c | v | b | n | m | i | a | g |

4 Complete the statements. Use the words from Exercise 3.

أكمل الجمل. استخدم الرياضات من التمرين (٣) :

- My brother is on the football team. They have a match next week.
- I think swimming is difficult. You can't kick the ball with your feet!
- My sister is good at karate. She goes to the pool every Friday.
- I'm good at tennis. I have a black belt.
- My friend and I are playing volleyball on the grass with our new rackets.
- We love sailing. We take our boat on the river.
- I'm not very good at baseball. I can't hit the ball hard enough against the wall!
- I can't always tell the difference between karate and taekwondo but I like both sports!



# Revision

5

Look and match:

انظر وصل:

1 ice

2 sunny

3 stormy

4 rainy

5 windy

6 cloudy

a



b



c



d



e



f



Look and write about the weather in each city.

انظر واكتب عن الطقس في كل مدينة:

| City    | Cairo | Alexandria | Giza | Port Said |
|---------|-------|------------|------|-----------|
| Weather |       |            |      |           |

1. In Cairo, it is sunny and hot.

2. ....

3. ....

4. ....





words in the box:

اكمل الجمل بما يناسبك ويناسب من تعرفه من الاشخاص بكلمات من الاطار:

drought - flood - heat wave - sandstorms - windy

1. When it gets very windy in the desert, there are sometimes sandstorms.
2. A flood happens when there is too much rain and rivers are full.
3. A heat wave is when it's very hot for a short time.
4. If it doesn't rain for a very long time and plants can't grow, there is a drought.



Write the words under the pictures:

رتب الحروف لتكوين كلمات عن أماكن في المدينة. اكتب الكلمات تحت الصور:

- a. saqre
- c. ~~kbn~~
- e. lrbray
- g. muusem

- b. shponig allm
- d. stanoi
- f. fcaotry

1



2



3



4

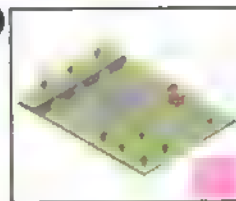


bank

5



6



7



# I discover myself

## Green cities

مدن خضراء



### Objectives of the Unit

### أهداف الوحدة

- 1 Listen, read, write, and research about green spaces in towns.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويكتب ويعمل بحث عن المساحات الخضراء في المدن.

- 2 Talk about how often we do things

- يتحدث الطالب عن عدد المرات التي نقوم فيها بعمل الأشياء.

- 3 Listen and read about a project to make a city greener.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ عن مشروع لجعل المدينة أكثر خضرة.

- 4 Say the sounds (th) (θ) and (s) /s/.

- يقول الطالب الأصوات (s) /s/ و (th) (θ).

- 5 Write an email about things I miss about Egypt.

- يكتب الطالب بريدًا إلكترونيًا عن الأشياء التي يفتقدها في مصر.

- 6 Research and make an infographic about my area.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وعمل رسم بياني عن منطقته.

# Lesson

## We work in the community garden



### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



apartment block

عمارة سكنية



pesticide

مواد كيميائية



harvest

يحصد



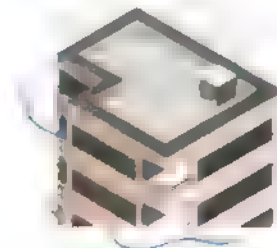
natural fertilizer

سماد طبيعي



plant

يزرع



root

سطح

### Fruit and vegetables

potatoes

بطاطس

tomatoes

طماطم

peppers

فلفل

pineapple

أناناس

onions

بصل

dates

بلح

lettuce

خس

lemons

ليمون

Help your child to know about community garden.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف عن الحديقة المجتمعية.



## Other words

### كلمات أخرى



|                  |                         |              |                                 |
|------------------|-------------------------|--------------|---------------------------------|
| tomorrow         | غدا                     | local area   | منطقة محلية                     |
| community garden | حديقة اجتماعية          | interesting  | شيق / مثير                      |
| space            | مساحة                   | fresh        | طازج                            |
| volunteer        | متطوع                   | organic      | عضوي (طبيعي بدون مواد كيميائية) |
| neighborhood     | حي سكني                 | square meter | متر مربع                        |
| roof garden      | حديقة علوية (فوق السطح) |              |                                 |

## Conjugation of verbs

### مضارع

### Regular verbs

#### أفعال منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

|         |      |
|---------|------|
| plant   | يزرع |
| produce | يبتج |

#### Past ماضٍ

|          |
|----------|
| planted  |
| produced |

### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

|      |             |
|------|-------------|
| grow | يزرع / ينمو |
| sell | يبيع        |
| mean | يعني / يقصد |

#### Past ماضٍ

|       |
|-------|
| grew  |
| sold  |
| meant |



## Phrases and prepositions

### عبارات وحروف جر

|                  |                  |                 |              |
|------------------|------------------|-----------------|--------------|
| all the time     | طول الوقت        | make friends    | يُكون صداقات |
| in the middle of | .. في منتصف      | it sounds great | يبدو رائعاً  |
| a year           | في السنة/ سنوياً |                 |              |



## Study the following

- I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden.  
- أساعد عمتي دائماً في الحديقة الاجتماعية بعد ظهر يوم الجمعة.
- It's a big green space on the roof of my Aunt Salma's apartment block.  
- إنها مساحة خضراء كبيرة على سطح عمارة عمتي سلمى.
- We grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the market, too!  
- نحن نزرع الخضار لتأكله، وأحياناً نبيعه في السوق أيضاً!
- What things do you grow?  
- ما الأشياء التي تزرعها؟





- 5 Sometimes we also plant fruit trees. في بعض الأحيان نزرع أيضًا أشجار الفاكهة.
- 6 People can grow their own fresh food. - يمكن للناس أن يزرعوا طعامهم الطازج.
- 7 We use natural fertilizer in organic food, we never use chemicals. نستخدم الأسمدة الطبيعية في الأغذية العضوية، ولا نستخدم المواد الكيميائية أبدًا.
- 8 Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables? - هل تنتج حديقتك الكثير من الخضراوات؟
- 9 Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city. - تساعد الحدائق العلوية أيضًا في تنظيف الهواء في المدينة.
- 10 They're a great place to meet people and make friends. - إنها مكان رائع للقاء الناس وتكوين صداقات.
- 11 We need more community roof gardens in our city! - نحن بحاجة إلى المزيد من الحدائق العلوية الاجتماعية في مدينتنا!



## الاستماع

استمع واقرأ. أين تذهب مريم في أيام الجمعة؟



استمع إلى النص



- Nour** : No school tomorrow! Do you want to come to my house?
- Mariam** : Thanks Nour, but I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden<sup>(1)</sup>.
- Nour** : The community garden? What's that?
- Mariam** : It's a big green <sup>(2)</sup> on the roof of my Aunt Salma's apartment block<sup>(3)</sup>. The people who work there are all volunteers<sup>(4)</sup> from the neighborhood<sup>(5)</sup>. We grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the market, too!
- Nour** : That's interesting. What things do you grow?
- Mariam** : Well, we usually plant tomatoes, peppers<sup>(6)</sup>, onions, lettuce<sup>(7)</sup> – things people eat all the time. Sometimes we also plant fruit trees. This year we have lemons and dates.

### Arabic Meaning

- ١- حديقة علوية (اجتماعية)
- ٢- مساحة
- ٣- عمارة سكنية
- ٤- متطوعين
- ٥- حي سكني
- ٦- فلفل
- ٧- حس





## Green cities

- Nour** And you grow all this food in the middle of the city? Wow!
- Mariam** Yes, it means people can grow their own fresh food and it's **organic** <sup>(8)</sup> too, which means we only use **natural fertilizer** <sup>(9)</sup> - we never use **pesticides** <sup>(10)</sup>.
- Nour** Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables?
- Mariam** Yes, it does. From just one **square meter** <sup>(11)</sup> of roof garden, we can **harvest** <sup>(12)</sup> twenty kilos of vegetables a year. And that's not all. Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city, which is good for people's health. And they're a great place to meet people and make friends.
- Nour** It sounds great, Mariam. We need more community roof gardens like that in our city!

٨- عضوي

٩- سماد طبيعي

١٠- مواد كيميائية

١١- متر مربع

١٢- يحصد

2

Completing the community with the words from the box

أكمل الملخص بكلمات من القائمة :

**aunt - clean - friends - grow - plants - roof - sell - tomorrow**

Nour asks Mariam to go to her house ..... **tomorrow** ....., but Mariam goes to help her ..... on Fridays. They work in a community garden on the ..... of an apartment block. They ..... vegetables and fruit for people in the local area, and sometimes they ..... them, too. Mariam thinks the community garden is a good idea because the ..... also help to ..... the air in the city, and it is a good place to make new ..... .



## هل كنت تعلم؟

'Urban greening' is an important part of town planning in many countries.

It means creating areas of plants and trees in cities.

These can be small parks between buildings or gardens on people's roofs.

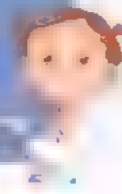
بعد التخطيط الحضري (المدن والأحياء) جزءاً مهماً من تخطيط المدن في العديد من البلدان.

وذلك يعني إنشاء مناطق للنباتات والأشجار في المدن. يمكن أن تكون هذه الأماكن حدائق عامة

صغيرة بين المباني أو حدائق فوق أسطح منازل الناس.



# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. My grandpa lives in the \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a city

☐ b country

☐ c moon

☐ d sun

2. My grandpa has a big \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a bike

☐ b farm

☐ c car

☐ d roof

3. My grandpa plants \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a pineapples

☐ b tomatoes

☐ c potatoes

☐ d carrots

4. I help my grandpa to \_\_\_\_\_ the crops.

☐ a play

☐ b harvest

☐ c eat

☐ d draw

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We don't use \_\_\_\_\_ when we grow organic food.

(2023)

☐ a fertilizers

☐ b chemicals

☐ c water

☐ d seeds

2. My father is a farmer. He grows \_\_\_\_\_ on his farm.

(2023)

☐ a vegetables

☐ b balloons

☐ c games

☐ d chemicals

3. The people who work in the community garden are \_\_\_\_\_.

(2023)

☐ a sellers

☐ b cooks

☐ c singers

☐ d volunteers

4. We prefer \_\_\_\_\_ food with no chemicals.

(2023)

☐ a organic

☐ b dirty

☐ c polluted

☐ d bad

5. Farmers put natural \_\_\_\_\_ on the soil to make plants grow well.

(2023)

☐ a fertilizer

☐ b fruits

☐ c sugar

☐ d oil

6. We have a farm and we \_\_\_\_\_ many crops every year.

☐ a burn

☐ b raise

☐ c feed

☐ d harvest

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.





## Green cities

7. I live in a/an \_\_\_\_\_ in the city with my family.

☐ tent

☐ apartment block

☐ cave

☐ factory

8. Farmers use \_\_\_\_\_ to kill insects that eat the crops.

☐ fertilizers

☐ crops

☐ chemicals

☐ lemons



**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

(2024)

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**market - volunteers - space - grow - fruits**

There's a community garden on the roof of my uncle's apartment block. The community garden is a big green \_\_\_\_\_. People can \_\_\_\_\_. Vegetables to eat. They can also sell them in the \_\_\_\_\_. We can grow all this food in the middle of the city. Some \_\_\_\_\_ from the neighborhood come and help us. I sometimes help my uncle in the community garden.



**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. lemons - This - we - dates - have - and - year.

نموذج (2023)

2. work - \_\_\_\_\_ - garden - community - the - in.

(2023)

3. grow - to - eat - them - \_\_\_\_\_ - vegetables - and - sell.

4. your - vegetables - garden - a lot of - \_\_\_\_\_ - produce?



**Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. it sounds great, mariam

2. what do you grow ,eyad



# Lesson 2

## Part 1

# We always work hard

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|                 |                              |               |                         |
|-----------------|------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------|
| logo            | شعار                         | gymnastics    | رياضة الجيمناز          |
| Mini forest     | غابة صغيرة                   | foreign       | اجنبي / غير اصلي المنشأ |
| Earth aid       | مساعدة الارض                 | project       | مشروع                   |
| organization    | منظمة / مؤسسة                | data          | بيانات                  |
| special         | خاص                          | naturally     | طبيعياً                 |
| nature          | الطبيعة                      | link          | رابط                    |
| wildlife        | الحياة البرية                | normally      | طبيعياً / بشكل طبيعي    |
| urban locations | مواقع حضرية (المدن والاحياء) | carefully     | بحرص                    |
| movie theater   | دار عرض سينمائي              | living things | كائنات حية              |
| competition     | مسابقة                       | once          | مرة واحدة               |
| region          | منطقة                        | snack         | وجبة خفيفة              |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

|            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| collect    | يجمع           |
| click      | ينقر / يضغط زر |
| enjoy      | يستمتع بـ      |
| offer      | يعرض / يقدم    |
| look after | يعتنى بـ       |
| relax      | يسترخي         |
| enter      | يدخل           |

|            |    |
|------------|----|
| collect    | ed |
| click      | ed |
| enjoy      | ed |
| offer      | ed |
| look after | ed |
| relax      | ed |
| enter      | ed |

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

|            |             |            |
|------------|-------------|------------|
| understand | يفهم        | understood |
| find out   | يكشف / يعرف | found out  |
| become     | يصبح        | became     |
| drive      | يقود        | drove      |



## Phrases and prepositions

## عبارات وحروف جر

over time

بمرور الوقت

work hard

يعمل بجهد

Help your child to know about Mini forest organization.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف عن مؤسسة الغابة الصغيرة.





### Study the following

- 1 Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our city.  
- الغابة الصغيرة هي منظمة تزرع مساحات صغيرة من الأشجار في وسط مدينتنا.
- 2 These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife.  
- تساعد هذه المناطق الخضراء الخاصة الناس على الاستمتاع بالطبيعة وتساعد الحياة البرية.
- 3 We never grow foreign plants in our projects  
- نحن لا نزرع نباتات أجنبية (غير أصلية المنشأ) أبدًا في مشاريعنا.
- 4 We always plant trees that grow naturally in an area  
- نحن دائمًا نزرع الأشجار التي تنمو بشكل طبيعي في منطقة ما.
- 5 We also usually work with local communities to plant and look after the forests  
- عادة ما نعمل أيضًا مع المجتمعات المحلية لزراعة الغابات والاعتناء بها.
- 6 We collect data from every forest  
- نقوم بجمع البيانات من كل غابة.
- 7 This helps us understand the effects of the new green space on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area.  
- يساعدنا هذا في فهم تأثيرات المساحة الخضراء الجديدة على الأشخاص والحياة البرية و مناخ المنطقة.
- 8 We rarely have enough volunteers to help us with our projects.  
- نادرًا ما يكون لدينا عدد كافٍ من المتطوعين لمساعدتنا في مشاريعنا.
- 9 We are always happy when people offer to help us.  
- نساعد دائمًا عندما يعرض الناس مساعدتنا.
- 10 Click on the link to find out more.  
- انقر على الرابط لمعرفة المزيد.





## Earth Aid

## What is Mini Forest?

Mini Forest is an **organization**<sup>(1)</sup> which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities.

These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife - like plants, animals, and other living things.

At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best **urban locations**<sup>(2)</sup> for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most.



We never grow **foreign**<sup>(3)</sup> plants in our **project**<sup>(4)</sup>, we always plant trees that grow **naturally**<sup>(5)</sup> in an area and we **care**<sup>(6)</sup> look after them until they become a small forest.

We also usually work with **volunteers**<sup>(7)</sup> to plant and look after the forests **over time**<sup>(8)</sup>.

We collect **data**<sup>(9)</sup> from every forest we plant a few times a month. This helps us understand the **effects**<sup>(10)</sup> of the new green space on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area.

We rarely have enough **volunteers**<sup>(11)</sup> to help us with our projects, so we are always happy when people **offer** to help us. **Ask**<sup>(12)</sup> on the **website**<sup>(13)</sup> to find out more.

- ١ مؤسسة
- ٢- مواقع حضرية (في المدن)
- ٣- احسن (عبر اصلي المبتدأ)
- ٤- مشاريع
- ٥ طبعيا
- ٦- يعتني
- ٧ مجتمعات محلية
- ٨- بمرور الوقت
- ٩- بيانات
- ١٠- تأثيرات
- ١١- متطوعين
- ١٢- انهم
- ١٣- الرابط

Listen and read again. Write T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences in your notebook :

استمع واقرأ مرة أخرى. ضع (✓) أو (X). صحح الجمل الخطأ في كراسك.

1. The new green spaces help people and animals. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Mini Forest only plants trees that don't normally live in that country. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Mini Forest volunteers help to look after the trees. \_\_\_\_\_
4. The organization uses information about the forests for research. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The Mini Forest organization wants more people to join and help. \_\_\_\_\_



## Tapescript



استمع إلى النص:



**Nadine** : What do you usually do on weekends, Gameela?

**Gameela** : I usually spend time with my sisters. We often go shopping<sup>(1)</sup> in the city center, or we sometimes go to the movie theater. What about you?

**Nadine** : I don't very often go into the city. I usually stay at home and help my mom, but I sometimes visit my grandparents with my sister, Injy, and her kids.

**Gameela** : Where do your grandparents<sup>(2)</sup> live, Nadine?

**Nadine** : They live in the countryside on a farm. It's near a city called Assuit. Do you know it? It's on the River Nile.

**Gameela** : Assuit? That's a long way from here. How often do you see them?

**Nadine** : About once<sup>(3)</sup> a month. My sister can drive so she usually takes me in her car. And we always try to meet up for the holiday at Eid Al-Adha too. We usually stay for a week at their house then.

**Gameela** : I love Eid Al-Adha! We always meet up with my mom's family for the holiday. They are all great cooks<sup>(4)</sup> and we always eat a lot!

**Nadine** : That sounds great!

**Gameela** : What about this weekend, Nadine? Are you busy?

**Nadine** : Not really. Do you want to do something together?

**Gameela** : Yes, let's go to that new café in our neighborhood. It's near the square<sup>(5)</sup>.

**Nadine** : Yes, OK. It looks nice and they've got delicious date and honey cakes! Saturday afternoon?

**Gameela** : Yes, that sounds great<sup>(6)</sup>. I'll text you.

## Arabic Meaning

١- يذهب للتسوق

٢- الريف

٣- مرة واحدة

٤- طهاة

٥- الميدان

٦- يبدو رائعاً



# Lesson 2

## Part 2

## We always work hard

### المضارع البسيط

### المضارع البسيط

### المضارع البسيط

• نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات وافعال روتينية وحقائق علمية.

- He usually **goes** to school by bus.

1

يتكون زمن المضارع البسيط من

Form

I / We / You / They + inf. مصدر الفعل

He / She / It + inf. + (s-es-ies)

- I **visit** my cousins every week.

- She **helps** her mom every day.

I / We / You / They + don't / never + inf. مصدر الفعل

2

Negative

He / She / It + doesn't + inf. / never + inf. + (s-es-ies)

- We **go** to school on Friday.

- He **doesn't live** in a city.

• لاحظ عند استخدام never في النفي مع He / She / It يبقى الفعل كما هو باضافة (s).

- She **never uses** a laptop

Do + I / we / you / they + inf. مصدر الفعل (كلمة استفهام)

Does + he / she / it + inf. مصدر الفعل (كلمة استفهام)

- When **do** you **get up**?

- I **get up** early.

- What **does** she **need**?

- She **needs** her glasses.

• للسؤال بمعنى هل تبدأ السؤال ب Does / Do

- **Do** you **like** pizza?

- **Yes**, I **do**.

إجابة مثبتة،

- **No**, I **don't**.

إجابة منفية،

- **Does** Ahmed **see** his friends on weekends?

- **Yes**, he **does**.

إجابة مثبتة،

- **No**, he **doesn't**.

إجابة منفية،

Help your child to know about the present simple.

ساعد طفلك أن يعرف عن المضارع البسيط.





## الظروف المتكررة

تنقسم ظروف التكرار إلى ظروف محددة (Definite) أي أنها تحدد عدد مرات حدوث الفعل .... مثل،

once / twice

وهناك ظروف غير محددة (Indefinite) وهي لا تحدد عدد المرات ولكن توضح نسبة حدوث الفعل من:

Always (100%)  $\xrightarrow{\text{إلى}}$  Never (0%)

| Indefinite frequency |        | Definite frequency |                |
|----------------------|--------|--------------------|----------------|
| always               | دائما  | once               | مرة            |
| usually              | عادة   | twice              | مرتين          |
| often                | غالباً | three times        | ثلاث مرات      |
| sometimes            | أحيانا | every day / week   | كل يوم / اسبوع |
| rarely               | نادرا  |                    |                |
| never                | أبدا   |                    |                |

0%  $\xleftarrow{\text{never}}$   $\xrightarrow{\text{usually}}$  100%

نستخدم ظروف التكرار للتعبير عن نسبة / عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

تأتي ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الاساسي وبعد فعل يكون (Verb to be).

- We **always** work hard at school.
- The weather **is always** cold in London.

للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل نستخدم:

How often do/does + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ؟ )

- How often do you play football? كم عدد المرات التي تلعب بها كرة القدم؟
- للإجابة عن السؤال السابق نستخدم ظروف التكرار المحددة وغير المحددة.
- How often do you study English?
- I **usually** study English.
- How often does she go to the club?
- She **goes to the club once a week**.



ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The weather is **usually** / **never** sunny in Egypt in summer.
2. I **rarely** / **often** eat dates as a snack – I love them!
3. **How often** / **How ever** do you play football with your friends?
4. Samer **always** / **never** plays video games. He doesn't like them.
5. We **sometimes** / **always** go cycling on holiday, but most days we relax on the beach.



6. You **rarely** / **sometimes** call me so late at night. Is something wrong?  
 7. Dr Mohsen is **never** / **always** late to work. He likes to be at the hospital on time.

2

Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل في كراستك.

- 10 pm / usually / in bed / before / **I'm**
- always / **My dad** / a healthy breakfast / in the morning / eats
- never / **Donia and Wael** / late / are / for school
- the dentist / you / go / **How** / do / often / to / ?
- gives / sometimes / us / **Our teacher** / homework / on weekends
- rains / **It** / the Western Desert / rarely / in

3

Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence.

ضع دائرة حول الظرف الصحيح في كل جملة.

- We don't like fish at all. We **often** / **never** eat it.
- Date palm trees **usually** / **never** produce fruit.
- My aunt lives with us, so I **often** / **rarely** speak to her.
- I **sometimes** / **never** do my homework in the afternoon, but I prefer to do it in the evening.
- Hani **rarely** / **often** plays football. He doesn't like sports.
- My father **sometimes** / **always** drives me to work. It's very far and there is no train or bus there.

4

Complete the paragraph with the best adverbial from the box.

أكمل الفقرة بالعبارة الزمنية التي بالقائمة.

**every day - once a week - twice a week - three times a year**

My sister, Dalia, plays basketball ① \_\_\_\_\_, on Tuesdays and Thursdays. She has a gymnastics lesson ② \_\_\_\_\_, on Saturdays. She also practices her gymnastics ③ \_\_\_\_\_ after school – she never misses a day! ④ \_\_\_\_\_, in June and December, there's a big gymnastics competition in our region. Dalia always enters! Go Dalia!



# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. To get information, click on the ... below. (2022)
- a area                      b climate                      c logo                      d link
2. A ... is an organization which plants small areas of trees.
- a club                      b Mini Forest                      c data                      d nature
3. I play video games ... a week on Friday and Saturday.
- a once                      b three times                      c twice                      d four times
4. He goes to the beach ... a week on Fridays.
- a four times                      b once                      c twice                      d three times
5. We collect ... from every forest.
- a pens                      b paper                      c data                      d books

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: الدقهلية (2022)

wildlife - green - areas - organization - neighborhood

Mini Forest is an organization. It plants small ❶ of trees in the middle of cities. These special ❷ areas help people enjoy nature. This ❸ tries to find the best urban locations, where people and ❹ need nature most.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: انشودم طامسا (2024)

There's an organization called Mini Forest which plants small areas of trees in the middle of cities. These green areas help people enjoy nature and they also help wildlife. They never grow foreign plants in their project. They plant trees that grow naturally in the area. They collect data from every forest to help them understand the effects of the green space on everything.

### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Mini Forest organization plants small areas of trees in the middle of ...
- a deserts                      b oceans                      c cities                      d parks



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



2. They never grow ..... plants in their project.

- a** foreign      **b** natural      **c** green      **d** local

3. The Mini Forest helps people enjoy .....

- a** teacher      **b** nature      **c** desert      **d** zoo

### B- Answer the following questions:

4. What is the Mini Forest? .....

5. Why do they collect data?

### 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My mom always ..... **(make)** basbousa. (2023)

2. I often ..... **(sees)** my aunt and uncle. (2023) الاستيعادية

3. They ..... **(play usually)** computer games on Sundays. (2023)

4. I don't ..... **(visiting)** my grandparents on Fridays. (2023)

5. The weather is ..... **(never)** sunny in Egypt in summer. (2023)

6. She always ..... **(go)** to school early. (2023) التسوقيه

7. How often ..... **(do)** Noha visit Cairo? (2023) ٥

8. How ..... **(long)** do you play video games? Twice a week.

9. Ahmed ..... **(always)** travels to China. He doesn't go there.

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1 grow - foreign - never - **we** - plants - in - our - projects. (2023)

2. she - does - her - visit - **he** - often - grandparents? (2023)

3. never - **My** - late - is - for - school. (2023)

4. wildlife - help - our - **the** - areas.

5. rarely - **we** - enough - have - volunteers - help - to - us.

6. grow - that - naturally - plant - trees - **the**



# Lesson 3

## Part 1

# Reading & Pronunciation

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



|                 |             |          |                          |
|-----------------|-------------|----------|--------------------------|
| pass through    | يمر خلال    | hang out | يقضي وقت في مكان / يتسكع |
| railway line    | خط سكة حديد | miss     | يفتقد شخص او مكان        |
| local residents | سكان محليون | well     | بصحة جيدة                |

## Other words

## كلمات أخرى



|              |              |                     |               |
|--------------|--------------|---------------------|---------------|
| New York     | نيويورك      | species             | فصائل / انواع |
| floor        | طابق / دور   | art works           | اعمال فنية    |
| a great view | منظر رائع    | theater performance | عرض مسرحي     |
| green spaces | مساحات خضراء | noisy               | مزعج          |
| no one       | لا احد       | news                | اخبار         |
| famous       | مشهور        | taste               | له مذاق       |
| High Line    | خط سريع      |                     |               |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مصارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مصارع

Past ماضٍ

|        |      |
|--------|------|
| create | ينشئ |
| decide | يقرر |
| pass   | يمر  |

|         |
|---------|
| created |
| decided |
| passed  |

|          |       |
|----------|-------|
| run      | يجري  |
| think    | يفكر  |
| hang out | يتسكع |

|          |
|----------|
| ran      |
| thought  |
| hung out |



|                 |                |   |
|-----------------|----------------|---|
| hang out        | يقضي وقت/يتسكع | spend time with, relax together               |
| local residents | سكان محليون    | people who live in a neighborhood             |
| passes through  | يمر خلال       | goes from one place to another                |
| miss            | يفتقد          | feel sad that you can't have or see something |
| railway line    | خط سكة حديد    | a road for trains                             |

### Study the following

- 1 Our apartment is on the sixteenth floor, so we have a great view.  
- تقع شقتنا في الطابق السادس عشر، لذلك لدينا إطلالة رائعة.
- 2 New York has a lot of green spaces.  
- نيويورك بها الكثير من المساحات الخضراء.
- 3 Some local residents decided to make the old railway into a big, long park.  
- قرر بعض السكان المحليين فكرة لتحويل السكك الحديدية القديمة إلى حديقة طويلة وكبيرة.
- 4 It's a green space with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it!  
- إنها مساحة خضراء، مع أكثر من 500 نوع من النباتات والأشجار!
- 5 New York is very noisy all the time. Alexandria is much quieter at night.  
- نيويورك صاخبة للغاية طوال الوقت. الإسكندرية أكثر هدوءًا في الليل.
- 6 There are lots of different restaurants here, and the food doesn't taste like the food at home.  
- هناك الكثير من المطاعم المختلفة هنا ولكن مذاق الطعام ليس مثل مذاق الطعام في البيت.
- 7 I think the food tastes more delicious.  
- أعتقد أن الطعام طعمه ألذ.
- 8 I miss our food so much!  
- افتقد طعامنا للغاية!



## 1 What do you like about your neighborhood?

ما الذي تحبه في حيك السكني؟

## 2 email. What's Wael's favorite place in New York?

وائل في نيويورك لمدة عام مع عائلته. أقرأ بريده الإلكتروني. ما هو مكان وائل المفضل في نيويورك؟

To : samer@email.com  
 From : waeltafwik@email.com  
 Subject : Life in New York

استمع إلى النص



Hi Samer,

How are you? I'm **well**<sup>(1)</sup> and New York is great!Our apartment is on the **High Line**<sup>(2)</sup>, so we have a great view of the city.New York has a lot of green **spaces**<sup>(3)</sup>. There are also**plans**<sup>(4)</sup> to create new parks and green spaces in parts of

the city that no one uses now, like the famous High Line – do you know about it?

Years ago, the High Line was a **railway line**, but in the 1980s trains stopped using it. Some **local residents**<sup>(5)</sup> then decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone **could** use. Now it's a green space, with more than 500**types**<sup>(6)</sup> of plants and trees in it! It is 2.5 kms long and when you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theatre performance, eat delicious food, go running, or just **hang out** with your friends. I think it's my favorite place in New York. It **passes through** our neighborhood, so I often go there with my parents. Here is one of my photos of it.How are things in Alexandria? I **miss** home. New York is very noisy all the time. Alexandria is much **quieter**<sup>(7)</sup> at night.

There are lots of different restaurants here in New York, and the food doesn't taste like the food at home. I think the food tastes more delicious in Egypt. I miss our food so much!

Write soon and tell me all your news,

Wael

- ١- بصحة جيدة
- ٢- الدور السادس عشر
- ٣- مساحات
- ٤- مشاريع
- ٥- سكان محليين
- ٦- فصائل - أنواع
- ٧- أكثر هدوءًا



# Lesson 3

## Part 2

# The Selfish Giant

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|               |                |                   |                    |
|---------------|----------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| selfish giant | العلاق الأناني | look out of       | ينظر الى الخارج من |
| wonderful     | رائع           | hole              | ثقب/ فتحة          |
| soft          | لين/ ناعم      | tiny              | صغير جدا           |
| wall          | جدار/ حائط     | suddenly          | فجأة               |
| empty         | فارغ           | branches          | فروع               |
| silent        | هادئ/ صامت     | in one corner     | في ركن واحد        |
| sweet         | حلو (الطعم)    | on their way home | في طريقهم للمنزل   |
| finally       | اخيرا          |                   |                    |

## Conjugation of verbs

### المضارع والمضارع

### Regular verbs

### أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

### أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

#### Past ماضٍ

#### Present مضارع

#### Past ماضٍ

|          |       |            |           |            |           |
|----------|-------|------------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| pass     | يمر   | passed     | hear      | يسمع       | heard     |
| share    | يشارك | shared     | come back | يرجع       | came back |
| turn     | يتحول | turned     | build     | يبني       | built     |
| cover    | يغطي  | covered    | sing      | يغنى/ يغرد | sang      |
| laugh    | يضحك  | laughed    |           |            |           |
| open     | يفتح  | opened     |           |            |           |
| climb up | يتسلق | climbed up |           |            |           |
| appear   | يظهر  | appeared   |           |            |           |



## Study the following

- 1 There are colorful birds singing in the trees. هناك طيور ملونة تغرد على الأشجار.
- 2 The lovely garden always makes the children happy. - الحديقة الجميلة دائما تجعل الأطفال سعداء.
- 3 The selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden - لا يريد العملاق الأناني أن يشارك حديقته.
- 4 The days pass and the garden is always empty and silent. - تمر الأيام والحديقة دائما فارغة وساكنة.
- 5 The green grass turns brown. The leaves fall from the trees. يتحول العشب الأخضر إلى اللون البني. الأوراق تسقط من الأشجار.
- 6 Then snow covers the garden and all the little birds and bees fly away. - ثم يغطي الثلج الحديقة وتطير جميع الطيور الصغيرة والنحل بعيدا.
- 7 Spring arrives in the village. وصل فصل الربيع للقرية.
- 8 Everything is under the snow. - يكسو الثلج كل شيء.
- 9 When you're not selfish good things happen. عندما لا تكون أنانيا فإن الأشياء الجيدة تحدث.

## 1 Listen to the audio. What does the text mean? Check your answer?

انظر إلى الصورة ما هو الفصل من فصول السنة؟ استمع واقرا؟ تأكد من إجابتك؟

### Tapescript



استمع إلى النص



In a village, there lives a **giant**<sup>(1)</sup> who has a wonderful garden.

In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are **colorful**<sup>(2)</sup> birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy.

But the **selfish**<sup>(3)</sup> giant doesn't want to share his garden, so one day he builds a big wall around it. Now the children never come there to play.

### Arabic Meaning

- ١- عملاق
- ٢- ذات ألوان كثيرة
- ٣- أناني





The days **pass**<sup>(4)</sup> and the garden is always empty and **silent**<sup>(5)</sup>. Slowly, the green grass turns brown. The leaves fall from the trees. Then snow covers the garden and all the birds and bees fly away.

Spring arrives in the village, but in the giant's garden it is still winter. Everything is under the snow. The giant doesn't understand. Usually his garden is beautiful in spring! What is wrong? Then one morning he wakes up and hears a lovely sound.

A little blue bird is singing in a tree outside. Then the giant hears another sweet sound - children laughing.

He looks out of the window and sees that the children have come back through a **hole**<sup>(6)</sup> in the garden wall. Now they are sitting in the trees. The leaves on the trees are green again and flowers are **open**<sup>(7)</sup> around them. The giant feels so happy to see his garden grow again.

But in one **corner**<sup>(8)</sup> of the garden it is still winter. The giant sees a **tiny**<sup>(9)</sup> boy standing there. He is too small to climb up into the tree. Suddenly the giant understands everything. "Now I know why spring didn't come," he says, "I think it's because I was selfish about my garden." He goes out and helps the little boy climb up into the tree. Suddenly, all the leaves on the tree open and the birds fly up into its **branches**<sup>(10)</sup> and start to sing. "When you're not selfish," the giant says, "good things happen."

٤- يمر

٥- ساكن / هادي

٦- ثقب / فتحة

٧- تفتح

٨- ركن / زاوية

٩- صغيرة جدًا

١٠- فروع



# Pronunciation

- ندرس في هذا الدرس نطق حرفي **th** مثل حرف (ث) في اللغة العربية حيث نخرج اللسان عند نطقه مثل **thin** ونرمز له بالرمز الصوتي **θ**.
- وندرس نطق حرف **s** حيث نستخدم الاسنان الامامية ولا نخرج اللسان مثل **sing** ونرمز له بالرمز الصوتي **/s/**.

th /θ/



thumb

اصبع الابهام

think

يفكر



mouth

فم

throw

يرمي



thirsty

عطشان

bath

يستحم



thin

رفيع

thunder

رعد

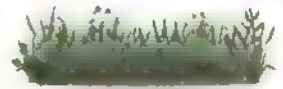


S /s/



sand

رمل



grass

عشب



sick

مريض



mouse

فأر



sing

يقني



seed

بذرة



stalk

ساق النبات



bus

اتوبيس

6

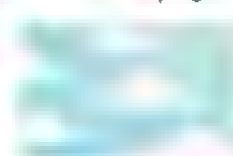
six

رقم (٦)



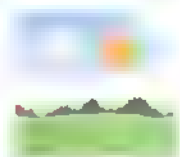
sunset

غروب الشمس



sky

السماء



sunny

شمس

th

|        |      |
|--------|------|
| pa     | طريق |
| ing    | شيء  |
| ick    | سميك |
| anks   | شكرا |
| reaten | يهدد |
| rough  | خلال |

s

|        |            |
|--------|------------|
| o      | لذلك       |
| pa     | يمر        |
| oft    | ناعم / لين |
| elfish | انانى      |

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي تسمعها:

نحن الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. a thick b sick
2. a throw b so
3. a path b pass
4. a mouth b mouse
5. a thing b sing

استمع واكمل الكلمات:

1. - eed
2. - - irsty
3. - talk
4. - - anks
5. ba - -
6. bu -
7. - oft
8. - elfish
9. - - rough

Listen, read and repeat:

استمع واقرأ وردد:

1. I think I have six thick thumbs.
2. The thin mouse thinks it's sick.
3. The sunset sky is sunny, but thunder threatens.



# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. I read and buy books at the \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a restaurant      ☐ b library      ☐ c park      ☐ d garden

2. They go \_\_\_\_\_ at the shopping center.

- ☐ a swimming      ☐ b shopping      ☐ c playing      ☐ d eating

3. There are \_\_\_\_\_ restaurants in the city.

- ☐ a a few      ☐ b lots of      ☐ c much      ☐ d small

4. The food is \_\_\_\_\_ at the restaurants.

- ☐ a bad      ☐ b tasty      ☐ c ugly      ☐ d salty

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ means to spend time and relax together. (2023)

- ☐ a Pass through      ☐ b Hang out      ☐ c Think      ☐ d Like

2. A \_\_\_\_\_ is very big. (2023)

- ☐ a giant      ☐ b little      ☐ c small      ☐ d tiny

3. We went to the museum and \_\_\_\_\_ through big gates.

- ☐ a slept      ☐ b built      ☐ c passed      ☐ d missed

4. Egypt is creating a new \_\_\_\_\_ line for the train station.

- ☐ a airport      ☐ b ferry      ☐ c pool      ☐ d railway

5. A lot of local \_\_\_\_\_ in Aswan work in tourism. (2023)

- ☐ a residents      ☐ b tourists      ☐ c farmers      ☐ d fishermen

6. When we have free time, we can just \_\_\_\_\_ out and have a good time.

- ☐ a miss      ☐ b hang      ☐ c pass      ☐ d taste

7. When I went on holiday, I \_\_\_\_\_ my friends. (2023) يا عيسى

- ☐ a lived      ☐ b hated      ☐ c missed      ☐ d sold





### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Our neighborhood is the place where we live. Our neighborhood has a nice park where people go to relax and enjoy nature. People love parks because they provide them with fresh air and green spaces. We have a bus stop close by, so people don't have to travel far for transportation. Grocery stores are near so everyone can buy what they need. Neighbors should be careful about what they do around other neighbors. I am happy living here because it is a safe place. People around me are friendly and helpful. I feel comfortable when I walk along the streets. There are many things to do in this neighborhood. I enjoy going out for walks and spending time with friends. I also like watching movies and playing sports. We should always try to keep our neighborhood clean.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is mainly about your .....  
☐ a restaurant    ☐ b park    ☒ c neighborhood    ☐ d grocery store
- The underlined pronoun "they" refers to .....  
☒ a neighbors    ☐ b parks    ☐ c bus stop    ☐ d banks
- Grocery stores are ..... so everyone can buy things they need.  
☒ a far    ☐ b near    ☐ c bad    ☐ d ugly

B- Answer the following questions:

- Why do people love parks?
- What should we do for our neighborhood?

### 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- have - a wonderful - garden - They. (2028)
- sixteenth - is - on - the - four - floor - apartment.
- spaces - has - a lot - of - many - green .
- our - I - food - so - miss - much!





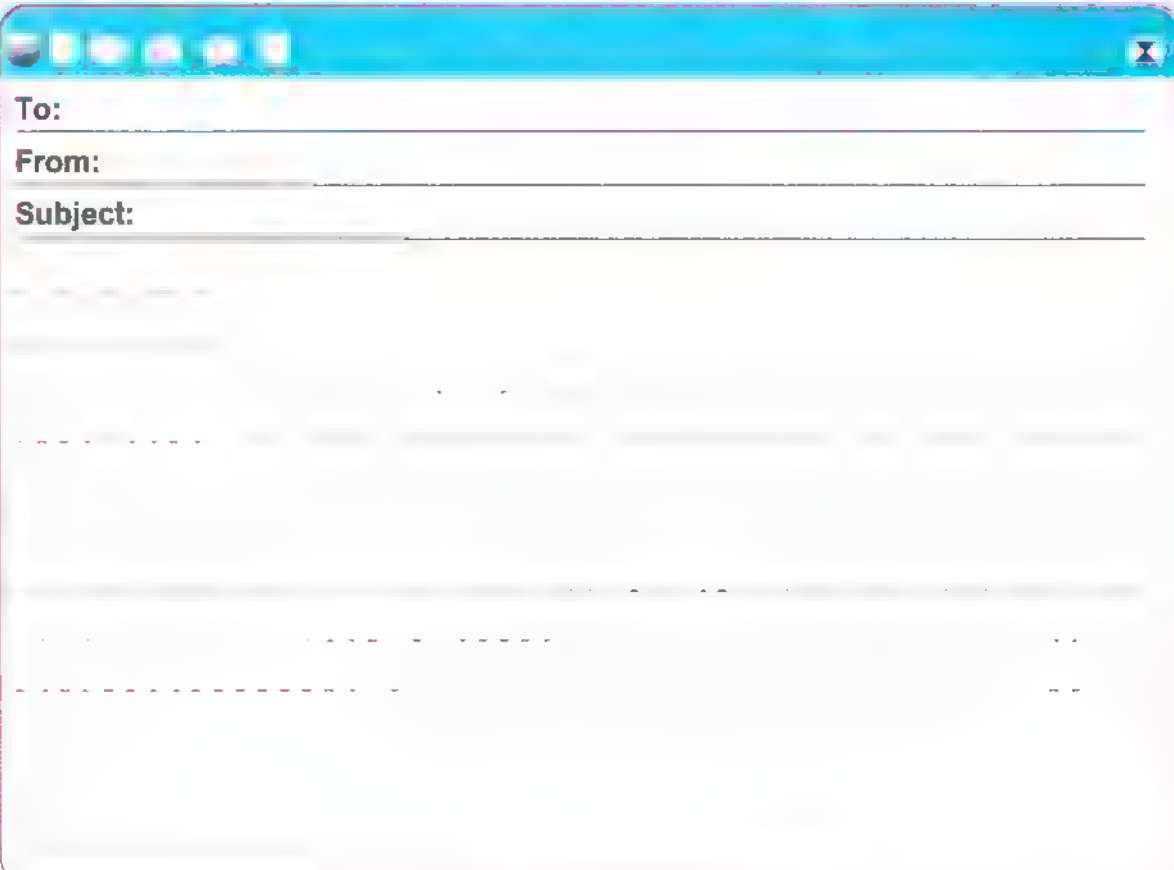
**5 Write an email of (50) words to your friend, Samy to tell him about your neighborhood:**

اكتب ایمیل من (۵۰) کلمة عن:

and your friend's email address is samy@hotmail.com

## مَجَابْ آخِرِ الْوَحْدَةِ

many places - friendly



**To:**

**From:**

**Subject:**

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الرفيم للآتي:

the selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden.



## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|                  |                                       |                  |                    |
|------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| The Meadows      | حديقة عامة كبيرة في إدنبره ، اسكتلندا | warm             | دافئ               |
| third floor      | الدور الثالث                          | especially       | خصوصاً             |
| the other side   | الجانب الآخر                          | For example      | على سبيل المثال    |
| a great view     | منظر رائع                             | Scottish         | اسكتلندي الجنسية   |
| distance         | مسافة                                 | porridge         | عصيدة (طعام تحلية) |
| Edinburgh Castle | قلعة إدنبره                           | honey            | عسل                |
|                  |                                       | family tradition | تقليد عائلي        |

## Study the following

- How are things with you? - كيف حالك؟
- Our apartment is in the city center. - شقتنا في وسط المدينة.
- It's on the third floor. - إنها في الطابق الثالث.
- We have a great view over the trees. - لدينا إطلالة رائعة على الأشجار.
- People use the park a lot for sports and meeting friends - يستخدم الناس الحديقة كثيراً لممارسة الرياضة ومقابلة الأصدقاء.
- There are lots of things I miss about Egypt. - هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي أفتقدها في مصر.
- Scottish food is OK but Egyptian food is better! - الطعام الاسكتلندي جيد لكن الطعام المصري أفضل!
- For example, for breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat porridge. - على سبيل المثال ، يأكل الكثير من الاسكتلنديين العصيدة في الافطار.
- I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames! - أفتقد جداً إفطاري المصري المفضل ، الفول المدمس!
- The people here are nice and I have a lot of new friends at school. - الناس هنا لطيفون ولدي الكثير من الأصدقاء الجدد في المدرسة.



## How to write an informal email

كيف تكتب إيميل غير رسمي

ندرس في هذا الدرس كيفية كتابة البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمي حيث يبدأ بـ

### 1. Opening phrase

عبارة افتتاحية

- Hello
- Hi,

### 2. A friendly expression

تعبير ودود

- Hey! How are you doing?
- How are things with you?
- How's it going?
- What's up with you?
- I hope you're well.
- Or if you are responding to an email that your friend sent you, you could say:

⊙ أما إذا كان الإيميل ردًا على إيميل سابق نقول:

- Thanks for your email.
- It was great to hear from you.
- I enjoyed reading your email.

### 3. Opening sentence

جملة افتتاحية

- I just wanted to let you know...
- I'm writing because...

### 4. Informal expressions

عبارات غير رسمية

- a really cool park,
- Hope you're doing well!

### 5. A request to reader

طلب من القارئ

- Please write back soon

### 6. Closing phrase

عبارة ختامية

- Lots of love
- See you soon!
- Can't wait to hear about .....
- Love, [your name]
- All the best, [your name]



**Example:**

**To:** ramy@gmail.com

**From:** hassan@yahoo.com

**Subject:** Birthday party

Hi Ramy,  
 How's it going?  
 Thanks for sending me the photos of your holiday. It looks like you had a great time! How's your family? And what about your pet?  
 I'm sorry that I couldn't get to your birthday party. I was really busy. Thanks for the invitation. Can you send me some photos from the party? I'd love to see how it all went.  
 I can't wait until you come to visit in March. Do you know how long you'll stay?  
 I'll try to think of some fun things to do.  
 See you soon.  
 All the best,  
 Hassan



Read Donia's email to her friend Laila in Egypt. What does she miss about Egypt?

does she miss about Egypt?

اقرأ البريد الإلكتروني الخاص بـ (دنيا) لصديقتها (ليلي) في الأقصر. اكتب شيئين تفتقدنهم (ليلي) في مصر.

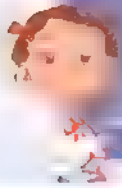
She misses the ..... and the .....

**To:** laila@egyptmail.com

**From:** donia@qwikmail.com

**Subject:** My new life in Scotland

Hi Laila,  
 How are things with you?  
 I'm finally in Scotland with Mom, Dad, and Hani. It's really interesting!  
 Our apartment is in the city center, just next to a really cool park called The Meadows. It's on the third floor and the park is on the other side of the street, so we have a great view over the trees. People use the park a lot for sports and meeting friends, so there's always something to see there. In the distance we can see the famous Edinburgh Castle, too!  
 I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt - the warm, sunny weather (it's never hot here) and especially the food! Scottish food is OK but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat porridge. They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put honey on it, but I don't really like it! I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames!  
 The people here are nice and I have a lot of new friends at school. I often go to my friend Rhona's house after school. We study together and sometimes we watch TV - in English!  
 Please write back soon and tell me all the news from home.  
 Lots of love,  
 Donia



# Activities

**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I have a lot of new ..... at school. I love them all.

☐ a friends

☐ b tomatoes

☐ c legs

☐ d apartments

2. In Egypt, most people eat ..... for breakfast.

☐ a carrots

☐ b tomatoes

☐ c ful medames

☐ d pens

3. I don't meet my friend for a long time. I ..... him so much.

☐ a see

☐ b miss

☐ c draw

☐ d stop

4. Our apartment is ..... the third floor.

☐ a in

☐ b on

☐ c of

☐ d for

**2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. are - with - How - you - things?

2. center - is - in - the - city - \_\_\_\_ - apartment.

(2023)

3. third - on - the - \_\_\_\_ - floor.

4. trees - have - a great - view - \_\_\_\_ - over - the.

5. usually - \_\_\_\_ - it - make - milk - with.

(2023)



**3 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Amir to tell him about the things you miss about Egypt:** **إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:**

Your name is Waleed and your email address is waleed@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is amir@gmail.com

مَجَابِ الْاُخْرِ الْوَحْدَةِ

food - people

[illegible]

**4 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- ## 1. how's your family

| Year                  | 2001 | 2002 | 2003 | 2004 | 2005 | 2006 | 2007 | 2008 | 2009 | 2010 | 2011 | 2012 | 2013 | 2014 | 2015 | 2016 | 2017 | 2018 | 2019 | 2020 | 2021 | 2022 | 2023 | 2024 | 2025 | 2026 | 2027 | 2028 | 2029 | 2030 | 2031 | 2032 | 2033 | 2034 | 2035 | 2036 | 2037 | 2038 | 2039 | 2040 | 2041 | 2042 | 2043 | 2044 | 2045 | 2046 | 2047 | 2048 | 2049 | 2050 | 2051 | 2052 | 2053 | 2054 | 2055 | 2056 | 2057 | 2058 | 2059 | 2060 | 2061 | 2062 | 2063 | 2064 | 2065 | 2066 | 2067 | 2068 | 2069 | 2070 | 2071 | 2072 | 2073 | 2074 | 2075 | 2076 | 2077 | 2078 | 2079 | 2080 | 2081 | 2082 | 2083 | 2084 | 2085 | 2086 | 2087 | 2088 | 2089 | 2090 | 2091 | 2092 | 2093 | 2094 | 2095 | 2096 | 2097 | 2098 | 2099 | 2100 |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |
|-----------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|
| Population (millions) | 6.1  | 6.2  | 6.3  | 6.4  | 6.5  | 6.6  | 6.7  | 6.8  | 6.9  | 7.0  | 7.1  | 7.2  | 7.3  | 7.4  | 7.5  | 7.6  | 7.7  | 7.8  | 7.9  | 8.0  | 8.1  | 8.2  | 8.3  | 8.4  | 8.5  | 8.6  | 8.7  | 8.8  | 8.9  | 9.0  | 9.1  | 9.2  | 9.3  | 9.4  | 9.5  | 9.6  | 9.7  | 9.8  | 9.9  | 10.0 | 10.1 | 10.2 | 10.3 | 10.4 | 10.5 | 10.6 | 10.7 | 10.8 | 10.9 | 11.0 | 11.1 | 11.2 | 11.3 | 11.4 | 11.5 | 11.6 | 11.7 | 11.8 | 11.9 | 12.0 | 12.1 | 12.2 | 12.3 | 12.4 | 12.5 | 12.6 | 12.7 | 12.8 | 12.9 | 13.0 | 13.1 | 13.2 | 13.3 | 13.4 | 13.5 | 13.6 | 13.7 | 13.8 | 13.9 | 14.0 | 14.1 | 14.2 | 14.3 | 14.4 | 14.5 | 14.6 | 14.7 | 14.8 | 14.9 | 15.0 | 15.1 | 15.2 | 15.3 | 15.4 | 15.5 | 15.6 | 15.7 | 15.8 | 15.9 | 16.0 | 16.1 | 16.2 | 16.3 | 16.4 | 16.5 | 16.6 | 16.7 | 16.8 | 16.9 | 17.0 | 17.1 | 17.2 | 17.3 | 17.4 | 17.5 | 17.6 | 17.7 | 17.8 | 17.9 | 18.0 | 18.1 | 18.2 | 18.3 | 18.4 | 18.5 | 18.6 | 18.7 | 18.8 | 18.9 | 19.0 | 19.1 | 19.2 | 19.3 | 19.4 | 19.5 | 19.6 | 19.7 | 19.8 | 19.9 | 20.0 | 20.1 | 20.2 | 20.3 | 20.4 | 20.5 | 20.6 | 20.7 | 20.8 | 20.9 | 21.0 | 21.1 | 21.2 | 21.3 | 21.4 | 21.5 | 21.6 | 21.7 | 21.8 | 21.9 | 22.0 | 22.1 | 22.2 | 22.3 | 22.4 | 22.5 | 22.6 | 22.7 | 22.8 | 22.9 | 23.0 | 23.1 | 23.2 | 23.3 | 23.4 | 23.5 | 23.6 | 23.7 | 23.8 | 23.9 | 24.0 | 24.1 | 24.2 | 24.3 | 24.4 | 24.5 | 24.6 | 24.7 | 24.8 | 24.9 | 25.0 | 25.1 | 25.2 | 25.3 | 25.4 | 25.5 | 25.6 | 25.7 | 25.8 | 25.9 | 26.0 | 26.1 | 26.2 | 26.3 | 26.4 | 26.5 | 26.6 | 26.7 | 26.8 | 26.9 | 27.0 | 27.1 | 27.2 | 27.3 | 27.4 | 27.5 | 27.6 | 27.7 | 27.8 | 27.9 | 28.0 | 28.1 | 28.2 | 28.3 | 28.4 | 28.5 | 28.6 | 28.7 | 28.8 | 28.9 | 29.0 | 29.1 | 29.2 | 29.3 | 29.4 | 29.5 | 29.6 | 29.7 | 29.8 | 29.9 | 30.0 | 30.1 | 30.2 | 30.3 | 30.4 | 30.5 | 30.6 | 30.7 | 30.8 | 30.9 | 31.0 | 31.1 | 31.2 | 31.3 | 31.4 | 31.5 | 31.6 | 31.7 | 31.8 | 31.9 | 32.0 | 32.1 | 32.2 | 32.3 | 32.4 | 32.5 | 32.6 | 32.7 | 32.8 | 32.9 | 33.0 | 33.1 | 33.2 | 33.3 | 33.4 | 33.5 | 33.6 | 33.7 | 33.8 | 33.9 | 34.0 | 34.1 | 34.2 | 34.3 | 34.4 | 34.5 | 34.6 | 34.7 | 34.8 | 34.9 | 35.0 | 35.1 | 35.2 | 35.3 | 35.4 | 35.5 | 35.6 | 35.7 | 35.8 | 35.9 | 36.0 | 36.1 | 36.2 | 36.3 | 36.4 | 36.5 | 36.6 | 36.7 | 36.8 | 36.9 |  |

2. egyptian food is good



# Review



## Key vocabulary



apartment  
عمارة سكنية



chemicals  
مواد كيميائية



harvest  
يحصد



plant  
يزرع



natural fertilizer  
سماد طبيعي



roof  
سطح

## Fruit and vegetables

potatoes

بطاطس

tomatoes

طماطم

peppers

فلفل

pineapple

اناناس

onions

بصل

dates

بلح

lettuce

خس

lemons

ليمون

Mini forest

غابة صغيرة

selfish giant

العملاق الأناني

organization

منظمة / مؤسسة

the Western Desert

الصحراء الغربية

special

خاص

foreign

اجنبي

nature

الطبيعة

hang out

يقضي وقت / يتسكع

wildlife

الحياة البرية

miss

يفتقد شخص او مكان

railway line

خط سكة حديد

well

بصحة جيدة

local residents

سكان محليون



# Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

click ينقر/ يضغط زر  
pass يمر  
cycle يركب دراجة  
share يشارك

Past ماضٍ

clicked  
passed  
cycled  
shared

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

find out يكتشف/ يعرف  
become يصبح  
drive يقود  
build يبني  
sing يغني/ يغرد  
hang out يتسكع

Past ماضٍ

found out  
became  
drove  
built  
sang  
hung out

## Language Functions

### الزمن المضارع البسيط The present simple tense

• نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات وافعال روتينية وحقائق علمية.

| Statement جملة                        | Negative نفى                                 | Question سؤال       |
|---------------------------------------|--|---------------------|
| I / We / You / They + inf. مصدر الفعل | + don't / never + inf.                       | Do + فاعل + inf.?   |
| He / She / It + inf. + (s-es-ies)     | + doesn't + inf. / never + inf. + (s-es-ies) | Does + فاعل + inf.? |

- He usually **goes** to school by bus.

- I **visit** my cousins every week.

- We **don't go** to school on Friday.

- He **doesn't live** in a city.

- **Do you like** pizza?

- Yes, I do. **إجابة مثبتة.**

- No, I don't. **إجابة منفية.**

- **Does Ahmed see** his friends on weekends?

- Yes, he does. **إجابة مثبتة.**

- No, he doesn't. **إجابة منفية.**

## Frequency Adverbs

Always (100%) **إلى** Never (0%)

**Indefinite**  
always دائماً  
usually عادة  
often غالباً  
sometimes أحياناً  
rarely نادراً  
never أبداً

once مرة  
twice مرتين  
three times ثلاث مرات  
every day / week كل يوم / اسبوع

• نستخدم ظروف التكرار للإجابة عن سؤال How often

- How **often** do you play football?

I play football **twice** a week. \ I **sometimes** play football.





## Answers to Paragraphs / Emails

1

### New Message

To samy@hotmail.com

Cc Bcc

From kareem@gmail.com

Subject My neighborhood

Dear Samy,

How are you?

I'd like to tell you about my neighborhood. My neighborhood isn't very big but there are many places here. There is one park where we can have fun and practice sports. I have lunch at a nice restaurant that serves delicious food. Our neighbors are helpful and friendly. Our neighborhood is clean because we look after it. We put trash in bins and we plant trees and flowers.

See you soon,

Yours,

Kareem

2

### New Message

To amir@gmail.com

Cc Bcc

From waleed@yahoo.com

Subject Things I miss about Egypt

Hi Amir,

How's it going? I hope you're well.

I just want to tell you about my visit to England.

I traveled to England two weeks ago. I like England, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt – the warm, sunny weather and the food! English food is OK but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast a lot of English people eat sausages, eggs (fried or boiled) and toast. I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames and falafel!

Please write back soon

Lots of love

Waleed



## Al-Azhar Test

## My apartment

- 3 Our apartment is on the third floor. We have a great view of the city. Cairo has a lot of green areas. There are a lot of plants and trees. There are lots of restaurants here.

## Test Unit 1

## Your community garden

- 4 We have a community garden in our neighborhood. A community garden is a big green space. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. We grow vegetables and fruit. We sometimes sell them in the market. This garden helps clean the air in the city and it is a great place to meet people and make friends.

# Al-Azhar Test

الاختبار الخاص بالازهر الشريف

## 1 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

sell - them - grow - do - look

Ahmed : Good morning, Assem.

Assem : Good morning, Ahmed.

Do you ① vegetables and fruits in your garden?

Assem : Yes, I ②

Ahmed : What do you do with ③ ?

Assem : We usually eat or ④ them in the market.

Ahmed : You should ⑤ after these trees.

Assem : You are right.

## 2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

|          |        |           |           |  |
|----------|--------|-----------|-----------|--|
| thirsty  | thin   | sick      | bus       |  |
| always   | play   | usually   | sometimes |  |
| potatoes | onions | roof      | lemons    |  |
| harvest  | plant  | apartment | play      |  |
| silent   | empty  | forest    | sunny     |  |

## 3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We often fish.

- a eat      b eating      c eats      d doesn't eat

2. Early spring is the best season to seeds in the ground.

- a harvest      b sell      c plant      d play

3. The weather is usually in Egypt in summer.

- a cold      b rainy      c sunny      d small

4. I often see my school friends at weekends.

- a don't      b doesn't      c didn't      d 'm not

5. There's a/an ..... line near my house, but there aren't any trains using it now.  
☐ a railway      ☐ b airport      ☐ c bus stop      ☐ d taxi
6. We use ..... to kill insects that eat the crops.  
☐ a plants      ☐ b crops      ☐ c chemicals      ☐ d potatoes
7. We ..... vegetables in the market.  
☐ a play      ☐ b sell      ☐ c feed      ☐ d burn
8. They don't like fish at all. They ..... eat it.  
☐ a always      ☐ b often      ☐ c never      ☐ d once
9. We ..... unhealthy food.  
☐ a never eat      ☐ b eats never      ☐ c eats      ☐ d doesn't eat
10. New York ..... a lot of green spaces.  
☐ a have      ☐ b has      ☐ c don't have      ☐ d are

**4 Read the text and answer the following questions:**

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

My name is Ahmed. There are four people in my family. My father, my mother, my sister and me. My mother goes shopping every week. We have a roof garden. We plant onions, tomatoes and potatoes. Sometimes we plant fruit. We use natural fertilizer. Roof gardens help clean the air in the city.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. How many people are there in the family?

.....

2. When does the mother go shopping?

.....

3. How does the roof garden help the city?

.....

**B. Choose the correct answer:**

4. We plant onions and ..... (lemons - dates - tomatoes)

5. We use ..... fertilizer. (natural - normal - chemical)

**5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. nature - areas - people - Green - enjoy - help.2. grow - lemons - do - where - you?3. all - like - We - fish - at - don't.4. floor - third - It - the - on.5. have - a great - view - the - over - trees - view.**6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

floor - view - green - areas - trees



# Test

on level 1



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

لن الاستماع إلى التسجيل



1. Hala has two ☐ a sisters ☐ b brothers ☐ c pens ☐ d books
2. Hala lives in the ☐ a village ☐ b city ☐ c street ☐ d
3. Hala doesn't like going to the ☐ a cinema ☐ b park ☐ c school ☐ d restaurant
4. Hala helps her mum on ☐ a Saturday ☐ b Sunday ☐ c Monday ☐ d Friday

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. You can use old coffee as a natural ☐ a trunk ☐ b stalk ☐ c fertilizer ☐ d chemical
2. I prefer to eat fruit that is natural and organic with no ☐ a water ☐ b taste ☐ c chemicals ☐ d delicious
3. The Nile Delta has very fertile farming areas and the people ☐ a harvest ☐ b destroy ☐ c turn ☐ d look there every year.
4. ☐ a Engineers ☐ b Farmers ☐ c Volunteers ☐ d Teachers are people who work without getting money.

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

volunteers - market - tomorrow - green - vegetables

We need more community gardens. The community garden is a big space on the roof of an apartment block. The people who work are all from the neighborhood. They grow to eat and sometimes they sell them in the ,too.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: (2020)

I'm Maha. I'm 14 years old. On holidays, I help my family and my friends at our community garden. On the roof of our apartment block, we have a big green space. people in the neighborhood volunteer to help and grow vegetables with us to eat.

We usually grow tomatoes, peppers, onions and lettuce. Sometimes, we also plant fruit trees like lemons and dates. It's amazing to grow your own food.

#### A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "grow" means .....

☐ a draw

☐ b cut

☐ c plant

☐ d need

2. The main idea of the text is .....

☐ a healthy habits

☐ b community garden

☐ c sports

☐ d my favorite game

3. Lemons and ..... are the fruit trees they plant.

☐ a lettuce

☐ b dates

☐ c potatoes

☐ d mangoes

#### B. Answer the following questions:

4. How do people help at the community garden?

.....

5. When does Maha help her family?

.....

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. are - neighbors - and - Our friendly - helpful.

.....

2. do - farmers - rice - We are - grow?

(2023)

.....

3. miss - food - \_ - so - much - our!

.....





**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Nada sometimes ..... (**watch**) football matches on TV.

2. He ..... (**never is**) late for school.

**7 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i love my country egypt

**8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

**Your community garden**

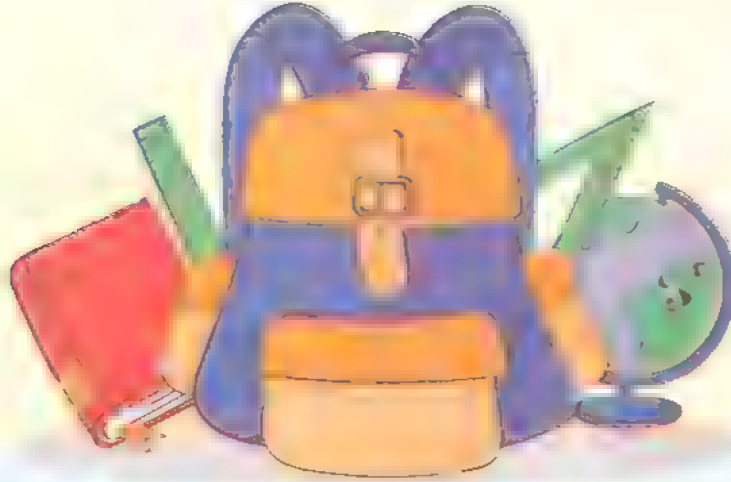
green space - plant trees



# I discover myself

## We are all different

نحن جميعًا مختلفون



### Objectives of the Unit

### أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, and write about people's personalities.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويكتب عن السمات الشخصية للناس.

2. Make clear what people, places, and things I'm talking about using who, which and where.

- يوضح الطالب عن من يتكلم أشخاص أو أماكن أو أشياء باستخدام **which, who, where**.

3. Describe my own and other people's feelings.

- يصف الطالب ما يشعر به وما يشعر به الآخرين.

4. Say the sounds / ʌ / and / æ /.

- يقول الطالب الأصوات / ʌ / و / æ /.

5. Write a paragraph explaining the positive and negative qualities of something.

- يكتب الطالب فقرة إنشائية عن الصفات الإيجابية والسلبية لشيء ما.

6. Make a leaflet about your school.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل نشرة توضيحية عن مدرسته.

# Lesson 1

## He's very clever



### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



#### Adjectives

#### صفات

|                  |             |                      |                       |
|------------------|-------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| nervous          | متوتر       | clever = intelligent | ماهر - شاطر / ذكي     |
| calm = quiet     | هادئ        | messy                | فوضوي / غير منظم      |
| shy              | خجول        | kind                 | عطوف                  |
| polite           | مؤدب        | friendly             | ودود                  |
| organized = tidy | منظم - مرتب | helpful              | متعاون - مساعد - مفيد |
| nice             | لطيف - جميل | funny                | مضحك - مرح            |

#### Other words

#### أخرى



|             |                 |                 |                |
|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| student     | طالب            | textbooks       | الكتب الدراسية |
| come on     | هيا             | extra           | إضافي / زائد   |
| break       | استراحة (فسيحة) | copy            | نسخة           |
| already     | بالفعل          | worksheet       | ورقة الأسئلة   |
| personality | شخصية           | really          | حقا / جدًا     |
| respect     | احترام - يحترم  | take you around | يأخذك في جولة  |
| relaxed     | مسترخي          | friend          | صديق           |

### Useful phrases

|           |             |   |
|-----------|-------------|---|
| friendly  | ودود        | nice to others, helpful                       |
| shy       | خجول        | worried about talking to people, quiet        |
| clever    | ذكي / ماهر  | intelligent, good at school work              |
| polite    | مؤدب        | speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect |
| messy     | فوضوي       | not tidy or organized                         |
| organized | مرتب / منظم | tidy, careful                                 |
| nervous   | متوتر       | not calm, worried                             |





## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

### أفعال منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

#### Past ماضٍ

|       |            |
|-------|------------|
| stay  | يبقى / يظل |
| worry | يقلق       |
| ask   | يسأل       |
| share | يشارك      |

|         |
|---------|
| stayed  |
| worried |
| asked   |
| shared  |

### Irregular verbs

### أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

#### Past ماضٍ

|      |             |        |
|------|-------------|--------|
| show | يعرض / يبين | showed |
| take | يأخذ        | took   |
| feel | يشعر        | felt   |
| meet | يقابل       | met    |



### Study the following

- 1 You look worried. Is everything OK? يبدو عليك القلق. هل كل شيء على ما يرام؟
- 2 Let's go meet some of my friends. هيا بنا نقابل بعض من أصدقائي.
- 3 I feel a bit nervous and shy. - اشعر انني متوتر وخجول قليلا.
- 4 Don't worry. We are all very friendly. - لا تقلق. كلنا ودودين.
- 5 He's very clever and he's good at math. - هو ماهر (شاطر) جدا وجيد في الرياضيات.
- 6 Do you have all your books yet? - هل استلمت كل الكتب الدراسية؟
- 7 I'm not sure which textbooks I already have. - انا غير متأكد اي من الكتب الدراسية التي استلمتها.
- 8 We can share my book today. - من الممكن ان نتشارك كتابي اليوم.
- 9 I have an extra copy of the worksheets. - لدي نسخة اضافية من ورقة الاسئلة.
- 10 Wow! You're really organized. - رائع. انت منظم للغاية.
- 11 Come on I'll show where the science classroom is. - هيا سوف اريك مكان حجرة الفصل الخاصة بمادة العلوم.
- 12 We should help him make friends. - يجب أن نساعدته ليكون صداقات.





Listen and read. How does Hazem feel today? Why?

استمع واقرأ : كيف يشعر حازم اليوم؟ لماذا؟



استمع إلى النص:



**Asser** : Hi, Hazem. I'm Asser. You look **stressed**<sup>(1)</sup>. Is everything OK?

**Hazem** : Hi, Asser! It's my first day at school and I feel a **bit**<sup>(2)</sup> **nervous and shy**.

**Asser** : Don't worry, we are all **friendly**. I can help you get to know the school.

**Hazem** : Really! Can you?

**Asser** : Sure. I can take you around, show you where your classroom is, and stay with you at **break**<sup>(3)</sup>! Let's go meet some of my friends. Look! There's Basel. Hey, Basel!

**Basel** : Hi, Asser!

**Asser** : Hazem, this is Basel. He's very **clever**<sup>(4)</sup> and he's good at math. You can ask him if you need any help with your homework! Basel, this is Hazem. He's starting school here today.

**Basel** : Hi, Hazem. Welcome to our school.

**Asser** : He's so **polite**<sup>(5)</sup>!

**Basel** : Thanks. Do you have all your books yet, Hazem?

**Hazem** : I'm not **sure**<sup>(6)</sup>. I have a lot of books in my room at home but I'm a bit **messy**. I'm not sure which **text books**<sup>(7)</sup> I already have.

**Basel** : We can share my book today. And I have an extra copy of the worksheets ...

**Hazem** : Wow! You're really **organized**<sup>(8)</sup>. Thanks, Basel!

**Asser** : Come on, I'll show where the science classroom is.

الأسئلة المقترحة

- ١- قلق
- ٢- قليلا
- ٣- فسحة/راحة
- ٤- ماهر - شاطر
- ٥- مؤدب
- ٦- متأكد
- ٧- كتب دراسية
- ٨- منظم - مرتب

2 Read again and answer:

اقرأ مرة أخرى وأجب عن الأسئلة؟

1. How does Asser help Hazem? Why?

2. Who is Basel?

3. What does Basel offer to share with Hazem?



3 Look at the bold words in the list. Match them to their opposites.

انظر إلى الكلمات المكتوبة بخط ثقيل في النص. صل كل كلمة بمعناها :

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| A           | B   |
| 1 friendly  | a not tidy or organized                         |
| 2 shy       | b nice to others, helpful                       |
| 3 clever    | c tidy, careful                                 |
| 4 polite    | d intelligent, good at school work              |
| 5 messy     | e not calm, worried                             |
| 6 organized | f worried about talking to people, quiet        |
| 7 nervous   | g speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect |

4 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

أكمل الجمل من التمرين رقم ٣.

1. Sarah is very **friendly**. She likes talking to people.
2. Hani is very ..... He shows respect to everyone.
3. Salma is never ..... She is calm and relaxed.
4. Salah is ..... There are lots of books and clothes on his bedroom floor.
5. If a new student is ....., we should help him make friends.



هل كنت تعلم؟

The way you move gives other people information about your personality. Each person has a different way of moving, just like we each have our own handwriting.

People who move in similar ways often become friends and work well together.

الطريقة التي تتحرك بها تعطي الناس معلومات عن شخصيتك. لكل شخص طريقة مختلفة للتحرك بالمثل كما أن لكل منا خط يده.

- الأشخاص التي تتحرك بنفس الطريقة عادة يصبحوا اصدقاء ويعملوا معاً بشكل جيد.



# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

أصغى الأسماع وادعوا إلى الله



1. Adel is a new ..... at El Salam Primary School.

- ☐ a teacher      ☐ b student      ☐ c worker      ☐ d doctor

2. Hatem is very .....

- ☐ a bad      ☐ b clever      ☐ c ugly      ☐ d tall

3. Hatem is good at .....

- ☐ a Arabic      ☐ b math      ☐ c English      ☐ d science

4. Hatem stays with Adel at .....

- ☐ a gate      ☐ b break      ☐ c class      ☐ d science lab

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. He is very ..... . He shows respect to everyone.

(2023)

- ☐ a lazy      ☐ b sad      ☐ c funny      ☐ d polite

2. Amr is the boy who is my best .....

(2023)

- ☐ a mother      ☐ b friend      ☐ c sister      ☐ d teacher

3. Ali is always good at school work. He is .....

(2023) البصريه

- ☐ a messy      ☐ b shy      ☐ c nervous      ☐ d clever

4. My mother is very ..... . She's very nice to others.

(2023)

- ☐ a clever      ☐ b nervous      ☐ c shy      ☐ d friendly

5. Tasneem is always ..... . She never worries.

(2023)

- ☐ a calm      ☐ b shy      ☐ c kind      ☐ d clever

6. This room isn't tidy. It's really .....

(2023) البصريه

- ☐ a clean      ☐ b messy      ☐ c good      ☐ d organized





## We are all different

7. Sara is always \_\_\_\_\_, she is worried about talking to people.

(2022)

☐ a shy

☐ b friendly

☐ c clever

☐ d messy

8. When I forget my book at school, I can \_\_\_\_\_ my friend's book

☐ a eat

☐ b share

☐ c sure

☐ d help

9. Jana is \_\_\_\_\_; she is tidy and careful.

(2023)

☐ a shy

☐ b messy

☐ c nervous

☐ d organized

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

respect - help - messy - clever - bad

I'm Sama. I have a lot of friends. My friends are all different. They ❶ \_\_\_\_\_ me do homework. My friend Salma is always ❷ \_\_\_\_\_. She is not tidy or organized. My friend Nadine is good at math. She is very ❸ \_\_\_\_\_. My friend Yara is polite. She shows ❹ \_\_\_\_\_ to everyone.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(2021)

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Eyad is a new student at school. He is thirteen. He feels a bit worried. Adam is Eyad's new friend at school. Adam is going to help Eyad get to know the school. He shows him where his classrooms are. Adam is very clever and he's good at math. Eyad can ask Adam if he needs any help with his homework. Eyad forgot his textbooks because he is a bit messy. Adam is very polite. He offers to share his worksheets with Eyad. Eyad now is very happy and quiet.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Adam is Eyad's \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a father

☐ b brother

☐ c friend

☐ d neighbor

2. The underlined word "messy" means \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a organized

☐ b not tidy

☐ c clever

☐ d not polite

3. Adam offers to share his \_\_\_\_\_ with Eyad.

☐ a room

☐ b pen

☐ c books

☐ d worksheets

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. How old is Eyad?

5. What is Adam good at?

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. share - Let's - today, - book - my - Kareem.

(2023)

2. You - have -    - your - all - books - yet?

3. should -    - him - help - friends - make.

4. go - meet -    - some - friends - my - of.

5. to - school -    - our.

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i have an extra copy of the worksheets, asser.

2. how does Hazem feel today



# Lesson 2

## This is where we study science Language focus

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|                      |                          |                    |                  |
|----------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| website              | موقع على الإنترنت        | playground         | فناء / ملعب      |
| laboratory           | معمل                     | bench              | مقعد طويل (ثابت) |
| tablet               | كمبيوتر لوحي             | water fountain     | مُبرِد مياه      |
| five-a-side football | كرة القدم الخماسية       | laptop             | كمبيوتر محمول    |
| fantasy              | خيالي                    | physical education | التربية البدنية  |
| IT Building          | مبنى تكنولوجيا المعلومات | pharmacy           | صيدلية           |
| equipment            | معدات                    | medicine           | دواء             |
| experiments          | تجارب علمية              | spaceship          | سفينة فضاء       |
| Gymnasium = Gym      | صالة ألعاب رياضية        | TV series          | مسلسل تلفزيوني   |

### Other words

### المفردات الأخرى

|                             |                        |                     |                       |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| after - school              | بعد المدرسة (صفة)      | tourist information | معلومات سياحية        |
| ostrich                     | نعام                   | basketball          | كرة السلة             |
| court                       | قاعة                   | handball            | كرة اليد              |
| desktop computer            | كمبيوتر مكتبي          | gymnastics          | الجمباز               |
| Information Technology (IT) | تكنولوجيا المعلومات    | pet                 | حيوان اليف            |
| school subjects             | المواد الدراسية        | proud of            | فخور بـ               |
| department                  | قسم                    | popular with        | مشهور بـ              |
| of all age groups           | من جميع الفئات العمرية | alive               | حي (على قيد الحياة)   |
|                             |                        | result              | نتيجة (الامتحان مثلا) |

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

#### أفعال منتظمة

| Present مضارع         | Past ماضٍ |
|-----------------------|-----------|
| study يدرس / يذاكر    | studied   |
| borrow يستلف / يستعير | borrowed  |
| repeat يكرر           | repeated  |

#### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع   | Past ماضٍ  |
|-----------------|------------|
| run يُدير مكان  | ran        |
| feel يشعر       | felt       |
| spend يقضي وقت  | spent      |
| hide يختبئ      | hid        |
| take place يحدث | took place |



## Study the following

- 1 We are proud of our new, modern buildings.  
- نحن فخورون بالمباني الجديدة والحديثة الخاصة بنا.
- 2 Study the map, and find out where the main buildings are.  
- ادرس الخريطة واكتشف أين المباني الرئيسية.
- 3 Students come here for their information technology lessons.  
- يأتي الطلاب إلى هنا من أجل حصص تكنولوجيا المعلومات.
- 4 This is the place where students study science..  
- هذا هو المكان حيث يدرس الطلاب العلوم..
- 5 There are four classrooms and two new laboratories.  
- يوجد أربعة فصول ومعملين جديدين.
- 6 The laboratories have all equipment.  
- المعامل بها كل المعدات.
- 7 This is a large open area where students spend time outside.  
- هذه منطقة كبيرة ومفتوحة حيث يقضي التلاميذ الوقت بالخارج.
- 8 He is the teacher who helps in the garden.  
- هذا هو المعلم الذي يساعد بالحديقة.
- 9 We have over 50 desktop computers which students can borrow.  
- لدينا أكثر من (50) خمسون حاسب آلي يستطيع الطلاب استعارتهم.
- 10 This is the building where you can find our computer classrooms.  
- هذا المبنى حيث يمكنك أن تجد الحجرات الدراسية للحاسب الآلي.

## Language focus

أولاً: ضمائر الوصل

## A- who, which, where

- نستخدم ضمائر الوصل لإعطاء معلومات عن شخص أو شيء أو مكان ما، ونستخدم هذه الكلمات مع المفرد والجمع. ونستخدم أيضاً هذه الضمائر بدلاً من تكرار الفاعل مرتين.

## who

- نستخدم (who) بمعنى الذي / التي للمفرد أو الذين / اللاتي للجمع لتحل محل الفاعل العاقل في الجملة.

- Mr Ahmed is a teacher. He teaches English.

- Mr Ahmed is a teacher who teaches English.



2

- نستخدم (which) بمعنى الذي / التي لتحل محل الفاعل غير العاقل (الحيوانات / الأشياء) في الجملة.

- These are **shoes**. I wear the **shoes** at school.
- These are the shoes **which** I wear at school.

3

- نستخدم (where) بمعنى حيث لتحل محل الأماكن في الجملة.

- This is a building. We do physical education at the building.
- This is the building **where** we do physical education.

الصفات المنتهية بـ «ed» والصفات المنتهية بـ «-ing»

ثانيًا ،

| صفات تنتهي بـ «ed» |             | -ing adjectives |      |
|--------------------|-------------|-----------------|------|
| excited            | متحمس       | exciting        | مثير |
| interested in      | مهتم بـ     | interesting     | شيق  |
| surprised          | مدهش        | surprising      | مدهش |
| bored              | شاعر بالملل | boring          | ممل  |
| tired              | متعب        | tiring          | متعب |

١ . نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) للشئ أو الشخص الذي لديه أو يمتلك الصفة أو ما يشعر به الشخص

كما بالمثل ،

1. I am **excited**.

أنا متحمس!

2. She is **interested** in science.

هي مهتمة بدراسة العلوم.

٢ . ولكن نستخدم الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) للشئ أو الشخص المسبب للصفة أو الشئ المسبب للشعور كما

بالمثال ،

1. The football game is **exciting**. (هنا لعبة كرة القدم هي المسببة للحماس)

2. This TV show is really **surprising**.

هذا العرض التلفزيوني مدهش جدًا. ( هنا العرض التلفزيوني هو المسبب للمدهشة).

● قارن الأمثلة لتفهم ،

1- I am **bored**. اشعر بالملل.

- He is **boring**. (مسبب للملل) هو شخص ممل.

2- She is **tired**. (تشعر بالصفة) هي متعبة.

- This job is **tiring**. (تسبب الصفة) هذه وظيفة متعبة.





# Practice



Complete the sentences with the correct word.

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة.

1. Amr is the mechanic ..... fixes cars.  
☐ which      ☐ who      ☐ where      ☒ whose
2. The film ..... I saw yesterday was boring.  
☐ who      ☐ which      ☐ whose      ☒ where
3. I have a new car ..... helps me go to work faster.  
☐ where      ☐ who      ☒ when      ☐ which
4. A pharmacy is a shop ..... we can buy medicine.  
☐ when      ☐ where      ☒ who      ☐ whose



Complete the sentences with the correct word.

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التي بين الاقواس.

1. Is this bike ..... (who) you bought?
2. Hamza likes the house ..... (when) he was born.
3. I like the English lesson because it is very ... (interested).
4. An ostrich is a big bird ..... (who) can't fly.



Read the text and answer the questions.

استمع الى النص:



اقرأ النص. أي مواد دراسية تم ذكرها ؟

## El Fouad School

Home About contact

Welcome to El Fouad School, a place where we are proud of<sup>(1)</sup>. We are proud of our new, modern<sup>(2)</sup> buildings and we are happy to show them to you. Please study the map and find out where the main<sup>(3)</sup> buildings are, and what we use them for.

### 1 The Ahmed Zewail Building

This is the place where students study science. There are four classrooms and two new laboratories<sup>(4)</sup>. These laboratories have all the equipment<sup>(5)</sup> which classes need to do experiments.

### 2 The West Court

This is a large open area where students spend time outside. There is a playground and playing field. There are also benches<sup>(6)</sup> to sit on under the trees and a water fountain<sup>(7)</sup> if you feel thirsty. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

### Answer the questions

- ١- فحور
- ٢- حديث
- ٣- رئيس
- ٤- معامل
- ٥- معدات
- ٦- مقاعد
- ٧- مبرد مياه

### 3 The IT Building<sup>(8)</sup>

This is the building where you can find our computer classrooms. Students come here for their Information Technology lessons. We have over 50 desktop computers, plus laptops and tablets which students can borrow.

٨- مبنى تكنولوجيا

المعلومات

٩- صالة الألعاب الرياضية

١٠- الجمباز

١١- الرياضة البدنية

١٢- كرة قدم خماسية

١٣- قسم

### 4 The 2024 Gym

The yellow building is our new **gymnasium**<sup>(9)</sup>. We use it for basketball, handball, and **gymnastics**<sup>(10)</sup> during **physical education**<sup>(11)</sup> lessons. There are some teachers who run after-school sports clubs here too, like **football**<sup>(12)</sup> (Mr Afifi, math **department**<sup>(13)</sup>) and tennis (Mrs Manal, French department).



## 2 Complete the sentences with the correct relative pronoun.

أكمل الجمل باستخدام where, which, who

1. Dalia is the girl ..... sits next to me in the English class.
2. An ostrich is a big bird ..... can't fly.
3. This is the street ..... my uncle lives.
4. I really love the red flowers ..... grow in our garden.
5. The supermarket is the place ..... we buy food.

## 3 Choose the correct adjective to complete the sentences.

اختر الصفة الصحيحة لتكمل الجمل

1. Hi Fareeda, I'm **surprised** / **surprising** to see you!
2. The children feel **bored** / **boring** when there is nothing to do.
3. His birthday party was **excited** / **exciting**. It was a lot of fun.
4. I'm really **interested** / **interesting** in Ancient Egypt.
5. I was really **tired** / **tiring** last night. I finished my homework late.
6. The results of the students' last test are **surprised** / **surprising**.

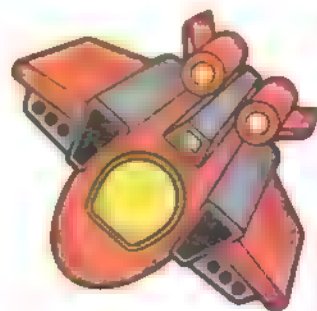


4 Read the text. Choose the correct word, a, b, or c:

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series (a) is popular with people of all age groups. It's because it takes place in the future on a planet called Wanda. This is a world (3) humans live because the Earth is now too hot.

The series tells the story of a boy called Frey who wants to return to Earth to look for his family. Frey is a clever, quiet boy who finds life on Wanda.

He doesn't have many friends but he thinks perhaps his family is still alive, so he decides to hide on a spaceship (7) is traveling to Earth. The problem is he doesn't really know where his parents are and he might not find them. I'm (8) to see what happens next!



1- (a) which

(b) who

(c) where

2- (a) interesting

(b) interested

(c) interest

3- (a) which

(b) who

(c) where

4- (a) which

(b) who

(c) where

5- (a) which

(b) who

(c) where

6- (a) bored

(b) bore

(c) boring

7- (a) which

(b) who

(c) where

8- (a) exciting

(b) excited

(c) excite





# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Omar is a student in primary .....  
☐ a four ☐ b six ☐ c five ☐ d three
- Omar likes .....  
☐ a English ☐ b science ☐ c math ☐ d Arabic
- Omar likes to play .....  
☐ a basketball ☐ b volleyball ☐ c football ☐ d tennis
- Omar doesn't like to play .....  
☐ a football ☐ b basketball ☐ c tennis ☐ d volleyball

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- The children feel ..... when there is nothing to do. (2023)  
☐ a bored ☐ b boring ☐ c excited ☐ d exciting
- We do science experiments in the .....  
☐ a laboratory ☐ b playground ☐ c gymnasium ☐ d IT building (2023)
- My brother's birthday is today, he is very .....  
☐ a exciting ☐ b interested ☐ c excited ☐ d boring (2023)
- We play basketball and handball during ..... lessons. (2023)  
☐ a science ☐ b IT ☐ c physical education ☐ d French
- We are ..... of our school. (2023)  
☐ a proud ☐ b sad ☐ c kind ☐ d nervous
- I'm ..... in visiting Cairo. (2023)  
☐ a interesting ☐ b interests ☐ c interested ☐ d interest
- I was really ..... last night.  
☐ a tired ☐ b tiring ☐ c tire ☐ d tyre

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- school - proud - are - We - our - of. (2023)



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

2. which - insects - Bees - are - make - honey. (2023)

3. science - Where - you - do - study?

4. birthday - party - was - His - exciting.

5. was - really - I - tired - last night.

**4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He is ..... **(interest)** in Ancient Egypt. (2023) متشوق

2. The school is a place ..... **(who)** we learn. (2023) نلتحق بها

3. These are the computers ... **(who)** we use for project. (2023)

4. Dalia is the girl ..... **(when)** sits next time. (2023)

5. Is this the bike ... **(who)** you bought? (2023)

6. Today's math lesson was very .... **(interested)**. (2023)

7. Ali is my friend .... **(which)** has a pet lizard. (2023)

8. The park is a place ..... **(who)** he flies his kite. (2023)

9. This is the math question ..... **(who)** I don't understand. (2023)

10. I like the house ... **(who)** I was born. (2023)

**5 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. hani doesn t like math. ....

2. where s the playground, Leila? .....

**6 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقره إسنائيه من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your school

مجااب آخر الوحدة

classrooms - playground



# Lesson 3

## Hare gets scared

### Key vocabulary

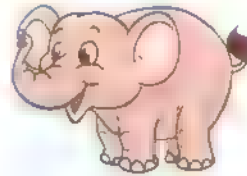
استمع إلى المفردات:



أرنب برى (أرنب كبير)



قرد



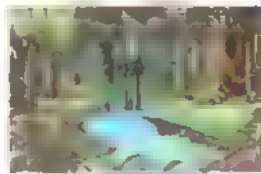
فيل



فأر



فئران



غابة



حشائش



معدة

### Other words



suddenly

نجاح

nobody

لا أحد

noise

ضوضاء

help

مساعدة

voice

صوت (بشرى)

finally

في النهاية

quickly

بسرعة

### Activities

sunny

شمس

strong

قوى

loud

عال - مرتفع (للصوت)

brave

شجاع

scared

مرعوب

angry

غاضب

afraid

خائف

clever

ذكى / ماهر

delicious

لذيذ





## Conjugation of verbs

| Regular verbs |       | أفعال منتظمة |  | Irregular verbs |       | أفعال غير منتظمة |  |
|---------------|-------|--------------|--|-----------------|-------|------------------|--|
| Present مضارع |       | Past ماضٍ    |  | Present مضارع   |       | Past ماضٍ        |  |
| remember      | يتذكر | remembered   |  | lie             | يرقد  | lay              |  |
| move          | يتحرك | moved        |  | speak           | يتحدث | spoke            |  |
| shout         | يُصيح | shouted      |  | come in         | يدخل  | came in          |  |
| cry           | يبكي  | cried        |  | tell            | يخبر  | told             |  |
| laugh         | يضحك  | laughed      |  | run away        | يهرب  | ran away         |  |

### Study the Following

- 1 It's a sunny day. - إنه يوم مشمس.
- 2 Her stomach makes a loud noise. - معدتها تتسبب في ضوضاء عالية.
- 3 If you come in. I'll eat you. - إذا دخلت، سوف أأكلك.
- 4 The animal which is in her house wants to eat her. - الحيوان الذي بمنزلها يريد أن يأكلها.
- 5 Hare runs to the forest where her clever friend monkey lives. - تجرى الأرنب البرية إلى الغابة حيث يعيش صديقها القرد الذكي.
- 6 There is an animal in my house and it wants to eat me! - هناك حيوان في منزلي، ويريد أن يأكلني.
- 7 I'm the biggest, strongest, bravest animal. - أنا أكبر وأقوى وأشجع حيوان.
- 8 Hare's door opens, and a small mouse runs out. - يُفتح باب الأرنب البرية ويخرج منه فأر صغير.
- 9 Everybody knows elephants are afraid of mice. - يعرف الجميع أن الفيلة تخاف من الفئران.
- 10 Hare goes inside to finally eat her carrot. - تدخل الأرنب البرية في النهاية لتأكل الجزرة الخاصة بها.



استمع واقرا القصة. من بداخل منزل الارنبه البريه؟

## Topic



استمع إلى النص:



It's a sunny day, and Hare lies in the grass. <sup>(1)</sup>، her stomach makes a loud noise<sup>(2)</sup>.

Hare remembers the carrots in her kitchen. She's hungry!

Hare runs back home. But when she gets to her door, she stops.

What is that noise? Something is moving inside<sup>(3)</sup> Hare's house!

"Is somebody there?" asks Hare.

"Stay where you are!" says a loud voice.

Hare is very surprised<sup>(4)</sup>. Who is in her house? Then the voice speaks again. "Hare, don't come in. If you come in, I'll eat you.

Hares are my favorite food."

Hare is very scared<sup>(5)</sup>. The animal which is in her house wants to eat her. Hare runs to the forest<sup>(6)</sup> where her clever friend Monkey lives.

"Monkey, please help me!" says Hare. "There's an animal in my house, and it wants to eat me!"

Monkey looks<sup>(7)</sup> interested. "An animal? Let's go and see," Monkey says.

They go back to Hare's house. "Who's in there?" shouts Monkey.

A voice answers, "Monkey, don't come in. I'll eat you if you come in. Hares are my favorite food, but monkeys are also delicious<sup>(8)</sup>."

Monkey and Hare look at each other. They are both very scared. They run to the lake where their friend Elephant lives. "There's an animal which eats hares and monkeys in Hare's house," they tell Elephant. "We need your help!" "Don't worry!" says Elephant. "I'm coming! I'm the biggest, strongest, bravest animal in the world. Nobody<sup>(9)</sup> can eat me!"

Elephant goes to Hare's door. "I'm coming in!" he shouts.

"Stop!" says the animal inside<sup>(10)</sup>. "I'm hungry and I love to eat ..."

"You can't eat me!" shouts Elephant. "I'm the biggest, the strongest ..."

Suddenly, Hare's door opens, and a small mouse runs out. Elephant jumps high in the air! He's very scared. For as everybody knows, elephants are afraid of mice!<sup>(11)</sup> "Help! A mouse! A mouse!" cries Elephant and he quickly runs away<sup>(12)</sup>.

Mouse looks at Hare and Monkey. "I'm sorry," she says. "Are you angry?" Hare and Monkey start to laugh. "No, we're not angry," they say. "Elephant's face was so funny!" They all laugh again. Then Hare goes inside to finally eat her carrots.

## Arabic Vocabulary

- ١- فجاء
- ٢- ضوضاء
- ٣- داخل
- ٤- مندهش
- ٥- مرعوب
- ٦- غابة
- ٧- يبدو
- ٨- لذيذ
- ٩- لا أحد
- ١٠- بالداخل
- ١١- فئران
- ١٢- يهرب



# Pronunciation

- سوف ندرس في هذا الدرس الصوتين / æ / و / ʌ /

**short (a) / æ / , short (u) / ʌ /**

- الصوت / æ / يسمى (short a) ينطق مثل كلمة **cat - hat** ويمثل هذا الصوت الحرف (a)

- الصوت / ʌ / يسمى (short u) وينطق مثل **cut** ويمثل هذا الصوت الحروف (o أو u)

وفيما يلي تصنيف الكلمات حسب الصوت:

|        |             |        |                    |
|--------|-------------|--------|--------------------|
| cat    | قطعة        | cut    | يقطع               |
| track  | مشى / مضمار | truck  | شاحنة              |
| hat    | قبعة        | hut    | كوخ                |
| bag    | حقيرة       | bug    | حشرة               |
| stack  | كومة        | stuck  | عالق (محشور) / لصق |
| ankle  | كاحل (قدم)  | uncle  | عم / خال           |
| animal | حيوان       | hungry | جوعان              |
| angry  | غاضب        | funny  | مضحك               |
| happy  | سعيد        | come   | يدخل               |
|        |             | nuts   | مكسرات             |
|        |             | duck   | بطة                |
|        |             | honey  | عسل                |
|        |             | brush  | فرشاة              |
|        |             | onion  | بصلة               |

1 Listen and circle the word you hear:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة:

نحن الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. hut / hat

2. bug / bag

3. stuck / stack

4. uncle / ankle



We are all different



Is the sound the same as cat or cut? Listen and check.

هل الصوت مثل (cat) أو (cut) استمع وتأكد.

| cat        | cut |
|------------|-----|
| 1. animal  | ✓   |
| 2. hungry  |     |
| 3. stomach |     |
| 4. funny   |     |
| 5. angry   |     |
| 6. come    |     |



Listen, read, and repeat.

استمع واقرأ وردد.

- لاحظ الصوتين /æ/ , /ʌ/ في الكلمات الآتية:

Happy Harry has some nuts.

Happy Harry has some nuts and a duck.

Happy Harry has some nuts, a duck,

and some honey.

Happy Harry has some nuts, a duck,

some honey, and a brush.

Happy Harry has some nuts, a duck,

some honey, a brush, and an onion.



# CLIL: MATH

## Estimating numbers تقريب الأرقام

- ١- عند تقريب العدد العشري إلى أقرب رقم،  
- إذا كان الرقم المطلوب تقريبه أكبر من 5 أو 50 أو 500 ..... يقرب الرقم إلى الرقم الأعلى أما إذا كان أصغر من أو يساوي 4 / 49 / 499 يتم تقريبه إلى الرقم الأصغر مثلاً،  
- عند تقريب الرقم 2.66 إلى أقرب رقم فإن العدد 66 0 أكبر من 0.50 ولذلك يقرب الرقم إلى واحد صحيح،  
 $2.66 = 3.00$   
- عند تقريب الرقم 2.43 إلى أقرب رقم فإن العدد 43 0 أقل من 0.50 لذلك اقرب رقم هو،  
 $2.34 = 2.00$

## Estimating numbers

اعمل مع زميلك واقرأ النص. ناقش،

Hatem's classroom wall needs painting. The class calculate how much paint they need to paint the wall. They measure the wall and write down the measurements. Then they look on the internet to see how many cans of paint they need.

يحتاج فصل حاتم إلى الطلاء. قام طلاب الفصل بحساب كمية الطلاء المطلوبة. قاموا بقياس الحائط ودونوا القياسات. بحثوا على الانترنت لمعرفة كم عبوة طلاء سيحتاجونها..

1. How do you think the students calculate how much paint they need?
- 2 How many liters of paint will they have left over?

Classroom wall measurements

Wall = h 2.66 m x w 7.95 m

الحائط = 2.66 م ارتفاع x 7.95 م عرض



When we don't need to calculate exactly, we estimate an approximate number. We can round decimal numbers up or down to the nearest whole number:

2.66 → 3.00 3.95 → 4.00

تقريب الأرقام كما درسنا بالأعلى

قرب هذه الأرقام لأقرب عدد صحيح،

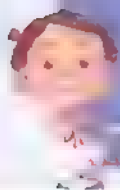
① 2.03 m

② 12.96 m

③ 1.11 m

To estimate how much paint they need, the students round their measurements up to the nearest whole number, then multiply them to estimate the area to paint:  
2 66 (→ 3 00) x 7 95 (→ 8 00) = 24 m<sup>2</sup>  
- لاحظ أن كل رقم تم تقريبه لأقرب عدد صحيح.  
Each can covers 22 square meters, so the students need 2 cans (4 square meters) to cover 24 square meters. They will have at least 20 liters left over.

كل عبوة تغطي ٢٢م<sup>2</sup>، لذلك سوف يحتاج التلاميذ إلى عبوتين (٢٤م<sup>2</sup>) لدهان (٢٤م<sup>2</sup>). سوف يكون لديهم على الأقل ٢٠ لتر متبقين.



# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Amr likes \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a fruits

☐ b vegetables

☐ c potatoes

☐ d tomatoes

2. Amr eats \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a peppers

☐ b carrots

☐ c chips

☐ d rice

3. Amr is scared of \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a lions

☐ b donkeys

☐ c dogs

☐ d giraffes

4. Amr likes \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a apples

☐ b bananas

☐ c strawberries

☐ d mangoes

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My uncle drives a big, white \_\_\_\_\_.

(2022) أسئلة

☐ a truck

☐ b cut

☐ c track

☐ d stack

2. I'm very ..... I want to eat.

☐ a hungry

☐ b thirsty

☐ c angry

☐ d nervous

3. There's someone here, I can hear his / her \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a hand

☐ b voice

☐ c face

☐ d finger

4. My grandpa tells us funny stories. He makes me \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a laugh

☐ b eat

☐ c see

☐ d angry

5. The \_\_\_\_\_ is the biggest land animal.

☐ a mouse

☐ b elephant

☐ c ant

☐ d lizard

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**smallest - biggest - clever - eats - tallest**

There are lots of animals in the forest. The elephant is the \_\_\_\_\_ animal.

The mouse is the \_\_\_\_\_ animal. Monkeys are \_\_\_\_\_. They play

everywhere. The giraffe is the \_\_\_\_\_. We all like to see these animals.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. lies - in - Hare - grass - the.

(2021)

2. hungry -     - love - I - and - to - eat.

3.     - are - monkey - the hare - scared - and.

4. moving - is -            - Hare's - house - inside.

(2021)

5. the kitchen - some -        - in - are - carrots.

6. is -        - an - animal - house - my - in.

5 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your favorite animal

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Guiding questions

1- What is this animal ?

2- Where does this animal live ?



# Lesson 4&5

## Writing & Project

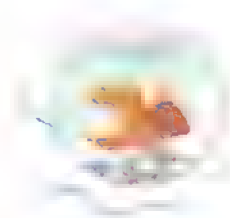
### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



lizard

سحلية



fish

سمكة



cat

قطعة



bird

طائر

pet

حيوان أليف

space

مساحة

fur

فرو

well-being

رفاهية / سعادة

claw

مخالب

points

نقاط

### Adjectives

calm

هادئ

independent

مستقل / يعتمد على نفسه

clean

نظيف

soft

ناعم / لين

positive

إيجابي

nice

جميل

negative

سلبى

true

حقيقي

friendly

ودود / عطوف

sharp

حاد



# Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

pet يُدلل  
touch يلمس

petted  
touched

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

keep يحتفظ بـ / يربي  
think يعتقد  
take يأخذ

kept  
thought  
took

## Study the following

- 1 Cats are my favorite animals. - القطط هي الحيوانات المفضلة لي.
- 2 They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. - هم حيوانات جميلة بفرو ناعم تحب أن تلمسه.
- 3 They are clean and calm animals. - هم حيوانات هادئة ولطيفة.
- 4 They like people, but they are independent. - يحبون الناس ولكنهم يحبون الاستقلال.
- 5 You don't need to take them for a walk. - لا تحتاج لتأخذهم للمشي.
- 6 It's true that cats have sharp claws and teeth. - من الحقيقي أن القطط لديها مخالب وأسنان حادة.
- 7 They only use them when they are scared. - يستخدموهم فقط (المخالب) عندما يكونوا خائفين.
- 8 People also say when you pet a cat, it makes you happy. - يقول الناس أنك عندما تدلل قطة، ذلك يجعلك سعيداً.
- 9 They are good for your well-being, too. - هم جيدين (القطط) لرفاهيتك وسعادتك أيضاً.

## Language focus

- 1 I like most types of fruit, but I don't like mangoes.
- 2 My new school is great, but it's far from my house.
- 3 Dalia is polite and clever but she isn't friendly.

هنا الأفكار متناقضة ولذلك استخدمنا **but** للتعبير عن هذا التناقض.



We are all different

1 Look at the pets. Write the words:

انظر إلى الحيوانات الأليفة. اكتب الكلمة:

bird - cat - fish - lizard

1

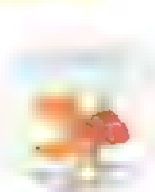


lizard

2



3



4



2

اكتب عن القطط أفضل الحيوانات الأليفة. اكتب بـ (P) للإيجابي و (N) للسلب.

هائي يكتب عن الحيوان الاليف المفضل له. اكتب بجوار كل كلمة (P) للإيجابي (N) للسلب:

### Cats as pets

|          |                  |                            |                               |
|----------|------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| calm (P) | usually friendly | have soft fur              | beautiful                     |
| clean    | independent      | have sharp claws and teeth | petting a cat makes you happy |

### Cats Are the Best Pets

القطط أفضل الحيوانات الأليفة

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People also say that when you pet a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well-being, too.



3

اربط العبارات لعمل جمل. استخدم but

اربط العبارات لعمل جمل. استخدم but

1. I like most types of fruit. I don't like mangoes.

I like most types of fruit. I don't like mangoes.

2. We want to go to the beach. It's raining today.

3. Lizards make good pets. It's difficult to find food for them.

4. My new school is great. It's far from my house.

5. Five-a-side football is an exciting sport. It takes a lot of time to practice it.



# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Fatma has a pet .....

☐ a cat

☐ b dog

☐ c lizard

☐ d bird

2. The dog has sharp .....

☐ a wings

☐ b claws

☐ c peak

☐ d hand

3. Fatma takes her dog for a walk .....

☐ a every day

☐ b week

☐ c month

☐ d year

4. The dog is calm and .....

☐ a bad

☐ b quiet

☐ c quite

☐ d ugly

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Cats are my best .....

☐ a fruit

☐ b vegetables

☐ c pets

☐ d plants

2. Cats use their sharp claws and teeth when they are ..... (2023)

☐ a happy

☐ b soft

☐ c scared

☐ d independent

3. Lizards are very ..... pets, they don't make noise.

☐ a clean

☐ b calm

☐ c noisy

☐ d scared

4. Cats have soft ..... which is nice to touch.

☐ a teeth

☐ b claws

☐ c paws

☐ d fur

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: (2023)

scared - shy - independent - claws - fur

Cats are my favorite animal. They are beautiful with soft ..... which is nice to touch. They like people, but they are ....., so they don't need to take them for a walk. They have sharp ..... and teeth, but they only use them when they are ..... I think they are the best pets.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.





We are all different

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. to touch - The - nice - cat's - is - fur. ----- (الفيديو 2023)
2. beautiful - Cats - are - soft - with - fur. -----
3. are - clean - and - They - calm. -----
4. good - are - well-being - They - your - for. -----
5. makes - you - a cat - you - When - it - happy - pet. -----

**Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

To your friend Hazem to tell him about cats.

Your name is Maged and your email address is maged@gmail.com and your friend's email address is hazem@yahoo.com.

**New Message**

**To**
.....

**From**
.....

**Subject**
.....

.....
Cc Bcc

**Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. I don t like mangoes -----
2. which animal does Doda like -----



# Review



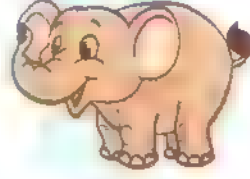
## Key vocabulary



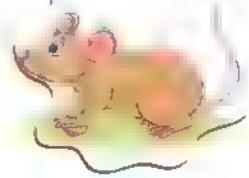
أرنب برى (أرنب كبير)



قرد



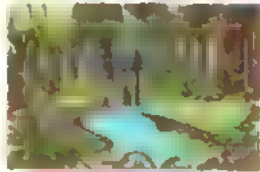
فيل



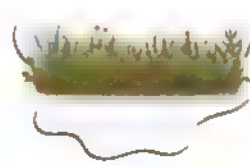
mouse  
فأر



فئران



غابة



حشائش



معدة



سحلية



سمكة



قطعة



طائر

laboratory

tablet

equipment

experiments

pet

معمل

كمبيوتر لوحي

معدات

تجارب علمية

حيوان أليف

Gymnasium = Gym

fountain

laptop

well-being

صالة ألعاب رياضية

نافورة

كمبيوتر محمول

منفعة / سعادة / رفاهية

## Adjectives

nervous

calm

shy

polite

متوتر

هادئ

خجول

مؤدب

organized

clever

messy

kind

منظم

ماهر - شاطر

فوضوي / غير منظم

عطوف





## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

|        |                |
|--------|----------------|
| offer  | يعرض           |
| borrow | يستلف / يستعير |
| cry    | يبكي           |
| pet    | يُدلل          |

#### Past ماضٍ

|          |
|----------|
| offered  |
| borrowed |
| cried    |
| petted   |

#### Present مضارع

|            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| show       | يعرض / يبين |
| feel       | يشعر        |
| take place | يحدث        |
| lie        | يرقد        |

#### Past ماضٍ

|            |
|------------|
| showed     |
| felt       |
| took place |
| lay        |

### • Relative clauses

ضمائر الوصل

- نستخدم (who) بمعنى الذي / التي للمفرد أو الذين / اللاتي للجمع لتحل محل الفاعل العاقل في الجملة.

- Sarah is the girl who always wins the race.

- نستخدم (which) بمعنى الذي / التي لتحل محل الفاعل غير العاقل (الحيوانات / الأشياء) في الجملة.

- This is the picture which I draw.

- نستخدم (where) بمعنى حيث لتحل محل الأماكن في الجملة.

- This is the building where we do physical education.

( الصفات المنتهية بـ «ed» والصفات المنتهية بـ «ing» )

١. نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) للشيء أو الشخص الذي لديه أو يمتلك الصفة أو ما يشعر به الشخص

كما بالمثال ،

- I am excited.

أنا متحمس

٢. ولكن نستخدم الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) للشيء أو الشخص المسبب للصفة أو الشيء المسبب للشعور كما

بالمثال ،

- The football game is exciting. (هنا لعبة كرة القدم هي المسببة للحماس)



## Activities 1a Paragraphs / Emails

### Lesson 1

- 1 My school is very big. It has a lot of buildings. I play football in the playground. I go to the IT building to use computers. I can borrow laptops. Students can go to the Gym. Students can play basketball and tennis. We use the Gym for physical education lessons. Mr Amr is a teacher who helps us in the garden. I like him very much.

### Lesson 2

#### My favorite animal

- 2 My favorite animal is the monkey. I like to play with the monkeys. They are very clever. They eat nuts and bananas. I like to see them in the zoo. They are very funny. Monkeys play everywhere. They like to play with people. When the monkeys start to play, the people laugh. Monkeys want people to play with them. I'm happy to see the monkeys.

### Lessons 4 & 5

- 3
- New Message**

**To** hazem@gmail.com **Cc** **Bcc**

**From** maged@gmail.com

**Subject** Cats

**Dear Hazem,**  
 How are you? I want to tell you about cats. Cats are my favorite animals. They are the best pets. I have a pet cat. Cats are calm and clean. They are independent. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They have sharp teeth and claws. They use them when they are scared. I give my cat good food. I like it very much.

**Yours**  
**Maged**

### Al-Azhar Test

- 4 I'm proud of my school. My school is very big. It has many classrooms. I use the computer in the IT building. My school has laboratories for science lessons. I play football in the playground.

### Test Unit 2

#### Animals in the forest

- 5 There are a lot of animals in the forest. The lion is the king of the forest. It is the strongest animal. It eats meat. The elephant is the biggest animal. It eats leaves and grass. The giraffe is the tallest animal. It eats leaves. The monkey is the funniest animal. It eats nuts and bananas.



# Al-Azhar Test

الاختبار الخاص بالارهر الشريف

## 1 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

calm - cat - do - have - fur

A : What's your favorite animal?

B : It's the ① .....

A : Do you ② ..... one?

B : Yes, I ③ .....

A : Does your cat have soft ④ ..... ?

B : Yes, it does.

A : Is your cat ⑤ ..... and quiet?

B : Yes, it is.

## 2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

|   |         |          |       |          |       |
|---|---------|----------|-------|----------|-------|
| ① | nervous | shy      | messy | hare     | ---   |
| ② | who     | which    | pet   | where    | -     |
| ③ | teeth   | claws    | fur   | building | ..... |
| ④ | in      | of       | on    | calm     | ----- |
| ⑤ | shout   | remember | laugh | clever   | ..... |

## 3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. These are the shoes ..... I wear to school.

- ☐ a which     
 ☐ b where     
 ☐ c who     
 ☐ d when

2. Sarah is very ..... She likes talking to people.

- ☐ a bad     
 ☐ b friendly     
 ☐ c angry     
 ☐ d hungry

3. Mr Ahmed is the teacher ..... runs the football club.

- ☐ a which     
 ☐ b who     
 ☐ c where     
 ☐ d why

4. Cats are the best .....

- ☐ a pets     
 ☐ b birds     
 ☐ c tools     
 ☐ d vegetables



5. The supermarket is the place ..... we buy food.  
**a** who                      **b** where                      **c** which                      **d** when
6. We play basketball in the .....  
**a** laboratory              **b** pool                      **c** class                      **d** gymnasium
7. The water is coming out of the .....  
**a** pens                      **b** books                      **c** fountain                      **d** paper
8. The lion has sharp and strong .....  
**a** fur                      **b** face                      **c** claws                      **d** tail
9. .... are my favorite animals.  
**a** Books                      **b** Cats                      **c** Pens                      **d** Bags
10. Nada is ..... She always shows respect to others.  
**a** messy                      **b** polite                      **c** nervous                      **d** shy

**4 Read the text and answer the following questions:**

أقرأ النص و اجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Samir and his friends went to the zoo yesterday. They saw a lot of animals. They saw the monkey and the elephant. They liked them very much. The monkey was funny. The elephant is the biggest animal. The giraffe is the tallest. We had a nice time.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

1. Where did Samir and his friends go?  
.....
2. What did Samir and his friends see?  
.....
3. What is the tallest animal?  
.....

**B. Choose the correct answer:**

4. The monkey is .....  
**a** bad                      **b** funny                      **c** tall
5. The elephant is the ..... animal.  
**a** thinnest                      **b** biggest                      **c** smallest





**5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. and - nervous - feel - shy - I - a bit.
2. have - laboratories - there - equipment - all.
3. don't - you - take - need to - for a walk - them.
4. a very - is - he - boy - kind.
5. good - has - math - at - is.

**6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجايب آخر الوحدة

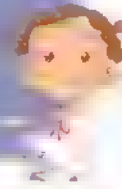
A place you are proud of

big - classrooms - computer - laboratories - playground



# Test

## Unit 2



### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Basel is in primary \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a four

☐ b five

☐ c three

☐ d six

2. Basel's friend is called \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a Adel

☐ b Hazem

☐ c Basim

☐ d Amr

3. Miss Hanan is the teacher of \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a math

☐ b Arabic

☐ c English

☐ d PE

4. Miss Hanan is \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a bad

☐ b kind

☐ c angry

☐ d happy

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. My friend is very \_\_\_\_\_. He is good at math.

☐ a bad

☐ b clever

☐ c angry

☐ d hungry

2. Ahmed is \_\_\_\_\_ because he has a test tomorrow.

☐ a shy

☐ b polite

☐ c nervous

☐ d organized

3. Hazem is \_\_\_\_\_. He is worried about talking to people.

☐ a messy

☐ b clever

☐ c bad

☐ d shy

4. We have the science lesson in the \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a playground

☐ b bathroom

☐ c garden

☐ d laboratory

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**laptops - IT building - laboratory - English - education**

I'm Adel. I'm very proud of my school. It has a lot of buildings. My school has a big \_\_\_\_\_ where we do a lot of experiments. We have technology lessons in the \_\_\_\_\_. We use \_\_\_\_\_ and tablets which students can borrow. We play five-a-side football during physical \_\_\_\_\_ lessons.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:**

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hany. I help new students get to know the school and their classrooms. I take them around and I stay with them at the break. I helped a new student yesterday. His name is Ali. He was very nervous and shy. I shared my book with him and I gave him extra copies of the worksheets. I love helping my friends. Next Friday, we will go to Cairo together and visit the Pyramids there.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The main idea of the text is about .

☐ a helping new students☐ b playing football☐ c studying☐ d teachers at school

2. Ali was shy and .

☐ a happy☐ b nervous☐ c strong☐ d organized

3. Hany is .

☐ a helpful☐ b frightened☐ c messy☐ d nervous**B- Answer the following questions:**

4. What did Hany share with Ali?

5. What will they visit in Cairo?

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. really - I'm - in - interested - Egypt - Ancient.2. football - The - is - exciting - game.3. do - you - Are you - science - study?



**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This is my school ..... (who) I learn subjects.
2. The children were so (excite) when they heard the good news.

**7 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

What's your favorite animal, saleh

**8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Animals in the forest

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

**Guiding questions**

1. What are these animals ?
2. What do they eat ?



# I discover myself

## Vacation plans

### خطط الإجازة



#### Objectives of the Unit

#### أهداف الوحدة

- 1 Listen, read, research, and write about making vacation plans.  
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن عمل خطط الإجازة.
- 2 Talk about facts using clauses with if or when.  
- يتحدث الطالب عن حقائق باستخدام عبارات **if** أو **when**.
- 3 Talk about when something happens using prepositions of time.  
- يتحدث الطالب عن شيء ما يحدث باستخدام حروف جر الزمن.
- 4 Read and listen to determine the central message.  
- يقرأ الطالب ويستمع لتحديد الرسالة الرئيسية (درس أخلاقي).
- 5 Practice saying the initial consonant sounds /w/ and /v/.  
- يتدرب الطالب على نطق أصوات الحروف الساكنة **/w/ and /v/** في بداية الكلمات.
- 6 Write a blog post about a place you like visiting.  
- يكتب الطالب منشور في مدونة عن مكان يحب زيارته.
- 7 Research and make a brochure about a vacation destination.  
- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وكتيب عن المكان المخصص للإجازة.

# Lesson 1

## Let's go quad biking on Tuesday



### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



زيارة المتحف

يزور المتحف



يلتقط صور



متحف قصر المنيل

متحف قصر المنيل



go quad biking in the desert

يركب دراجات رباعية في الصحراء

### Activities

أنشطة



ride on a rollercoaster

يركب قطار العرب (في الملاهي)



يتسلق مئذنة باب زويلة



يستكشف الاسواق

### Other words

### مفردات أخرى

vacation

أجازة

Why don't we?

لماذا؟

school project

مشروع مدرسي

look interesting

يبدو شيق

the theme park

الملاهي

the sunset

غروب الشمس

outside

خارج

top

قمة

Like what?

مثل ماذا؟



## Activities

## Places

excited about

متحمس بخصوص

cool

رائع

interesting

شيق / رائع

great

عظيم

difficult

صعب

## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

visit يزور

visited

come يأتي

came

arrive يصل

arrived

take يستغرق (وقتاً) / يلتقط

took

climb يتسلق

climbed

ride يركب

rode

explore يستكشف

explored

## Language Functions

1- Let's + inf (فعل في المصدر) .... هيا بنا ..

2- Why don't we + inf (فعل في المصدر) ....؟ لماذا لا نفعل ....؟

## Suggestion

الإقتراح

- Good idea. فكرة رائعة.

⊙ والرد: بالموافقة.

- No, thanks. لا شكراً.

⊙ والرد: بالرفض.

- Let's go to some activities for the trip.

- Good idea.

- Why don't we try new places?

- Okay, cool.

## Study the following

1 I'm excited about our vacation

- أنا متحمس لاجازتنا.

2 Why don't we try new places?

- لما لا نجرب أماكن جديدة؟

3 There are lots to see there

- هناك الكثير من الأشياء يمكن أن نراها هناك.

4 We can visit the Manial Palace Museum first

- يمكننا زيارة متحف قصر المنيل أولاً.

5 There are some places outside Cairo that look interesting.

- يوجد أماكن خارج القاهرة تبدو رائعة.



6 We can take photos for my school project.

- نستطيع أن نلتقط صور لمشروعى المدرسى.

7 Let's also go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster!

- هيا نذهب أيضًا إلى الملاهى و نركب قطار العرب!

8 What else can we do?

- ماذا أيضا يمكن أن نفعل؟

9 We can go quad biking in the desert in Giza.

- يمكننا ركوب الدراجات الرباعية فى صحراء الجيزة.

10 If we take the bus, we will arrive in about 30 minutes.

- إذا اخذنا الاتوبيس، سنصل خلال ٣٠ دقيقة تقريبًا.

11 It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful

- الأمر صعب لكن المنظر من الأعلى جميل.

12 Let's climb the Bab Zuweila Minaret.

- هيا نتسلق منڈة باب زويلة.

13 We can explore the souks! They're near the Minaret.

- نستطيع أن نستكشف الاسواق! هم بجانب المنڈة.

## 1 Listen and read. What happens in the story?

استمع واقرأ. أى مدينتين ذكرها الاولاد؟

استمع إلى النص:



**Samer** : I'm excited about our vacation<sup>(1)</sup> this week, Basel.

**Basel** : Me too! Why don't we try new places? We can travel to Cairo. There are lots to see there.

**Samer** : Yes. We can visit the Mandal Palace Museum<sup>(2)</sup> first. If we go to the museum on Sunday, on Monday we can take photos for my school project.

**Basel** : Okay, cool! My mom can go with us. She loves museums. Let's also go to the theme park<sup>(3)</sup> and ride on a rollercoaster<sup>(4)</sup>!

**Samer** : Okay! Let's do that on Tuesday. There are also some places outside Cairo that look interesting.

**Basel** : Like what?

### Arabic Meaning

١- إجازة

٢- متحف قصر الممبيل

٣- الملاهى

٤- يركب قطار العرب

**Samer** : We can go quad biking<sup>(5)</sup> in the desert in Giza. If we take the bus, we will arrive in about 30 minutes.

٥- يركب درجات رباعية

**Basel** : Great! We can go early on Wednesday and come back to the hotel before evening.

٦- مئذنة باب زويلة

٧- تستكشف الأسواق

**Basel** : Yes. What else can we do?

**Samer** : Let's climb the Bab Zuweila Minaret<sup>(6)</sup> on Thursday. It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful. If we are there in the late afternoon, we can watch the sunset over the city.

**Basel** : Cool! And in the morning, we can explore the souks<sup>(7)</sup>! They're near the Minaret.

**Samer** : Great! Cairo, here we come!



Did you know?

هل كنت تعلم؟

- When you see it from the air, the Nile valley is in the shape of a fan. In the north, where it opens into the delta, it is wide. In the south, where it passes between desert cliffs, it is narrow.

يبدو وادي النيل على شكل مروحة (مروحة يد) عندما تنظر اليه من الاعلى ويبدو عريض في الشمال حيث يتسع في الدلتا ، ويبدو ضيق في الجنوب حيث يمر بين منحدرات الصحراء .

# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Sherif is from .....

- ☐ a Luxor      ☐ b Cairo      ☐ c Tanta      ☐ d Sohag

2. Sherif took photos at the .....

- ☐ a station      ☐ b park      ☐ c museum      ☐ d school

3. Sherif went on a ..... to see the Nile.

- ☐ a train      ☐ b boat      ☐ c bike      ☐ d car

4. Sherif's vacation was .....

- ☐ a boring      ☐ b amazing      ☐ c interesting      ☐ d ugly

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I will spend my summer ..... in Aswan.

- ☐ a match      ☐ b vacation      ☐ c wedding      ☐ d birthday

2. I want to ..... the souks on Monday.

- ☐ a expand      ☐ b explain      ☐ c explore      ☐ d experience

3. Tamer will ..... photos for his school project.

- ☐ a take      ☐ b ride      ☐ c go      ☐ d climb

4. Why don't we ..... new places?

- ☐ a trying      ☐ b tried      ☐ c try      ☐ d tries

5. Let's go quad ..... in the Giza desert.

- ☐ a swimming      ☐ b biking      ☐ c playing      ☐ d running

6. We can ..... on a rollercoaster.

- ☐ a jump      ☐ b climb      ☐ c ride      ☐ d explore

7. I want to climb the Bab Zuweila ..... one day.

- ☐ a bike      ☐ b theme      ☐ c minaret      ☐ d lake





## Vacation plans

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

فشرقية - بكرة ديرب (2020)

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

photos - park - rollercoaster - museum - minaret

Last week, I traveled to Cairo with my friends. We arrived in Cairo early in the morning. We visited the Egyptian ① . We took a lot of ② with our cameras. We saw a lot of tourists. In the afternoon, we went to the theme ③ . We rode on a ④ . It was amazing.

### 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. ride - on - the - Let's - rollercoaster.

(2020) سب

2. explore - Should - the souks - Monday - we - on?

(2021) سب

3. do - What - we - else - can?

(2022) سب

4. vacation - excited - I'm - about - my.

5. can - go - biking - We - quad.

6. climb - minaret - Zuweila - Lets - the Bab.

### 5 Punctuate the following:

صغ علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. how do you get to Giza

2. i m happy to visit the park.

### 6 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

A visit to the Bab Zuweila Minaret

مجاب آخر الوحدة

the sunset - cool



## Lesson 2

### Part 1

If we book the tour today, it's cheaper

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|              |                      |                 |                         |
|--------------|----------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| online       | عبر الانترنت         | the freezer     | الفریزر (المجمد)        |
| company      | شركة                 | properly        | بطريقة ملائمة           |
| tour guide   | مرشد سياحي           | dictionary      | قاموس                   |
| helmet       | خوذة                 | turn down       | يخفض الصوت              |
| cheaper      | ارخص                 | block           | يمنع / يحجب             |
| discount     | خصم                  | social media    | وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي |
| bank details | تفاصيل الحساب البنكي | bake feteer     | يخبز فطير               |
| credit card  | بطاقة إئتمان         | study tips      | نصائح للمذاكرة          |
| tour         | جولة سياحية          | regular routine | روتين منتظم             |
| wallet       | محفظة                | healthy meal    | وجبة صحية               |

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

|             |              |              |
|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| book        | يُحجِز       | booked       |
| switch off  | يُغلق جهاز   | switched off |
| heat        | يسخن         | heated       |
| turn on     | يشغل         | turned on    |
| concentrate | يركز         | concentrated |
| last        | يستمر / يدوم | lasted       |

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

|            |              |            |
|------------|--------------|------------|
| find       | يجد          | found      |
| pay        | يدفع (مالاً) | paid       |
| say        | يقول         | said       |
| sit        | يجلس         | sat        |
| cost       | يتكلف        | cost       |
| write down | يسجل / يدون  | wrote down |
| hear       | يسمع         | heard      |

## Study the following

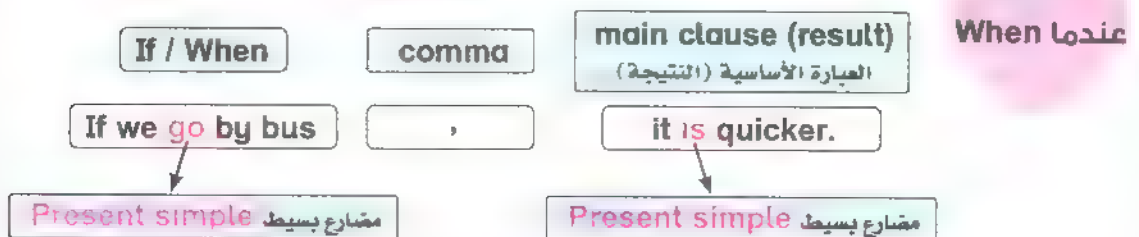
- 1 Study for about 30 minutes but no longer. - ذاكر لمدة ٣٠ دقيقة لا أكثر.
- 2 If you try to study for hours without a break, you can't concentrate. - لو حاولت أن تذاكر لساعات بدون راحة، لا تستطيع أن تركز.
- 3 When you have regular breaks, you work more. - عندما تأخذ أوقات راحة منتظمة، تعمل أكثر.
- 4 It's helpful if you write down what you want to do in each time in your study. - من المفيد إذا دوت ما تريده في كل وقت في فترة مذاكرتك.

## Language focus

## الحالة الصفريّة للحمل الشرطيّة "If" The zero conditional

١- نستخدم الحالة الصفريّة للتحدث عن حقائق أو الأشياء الصحيحة في الحاضر.

٢- يتكون من:



If / When + present simple + present simple

جملة في زمن المضارع البسيط + جملة في زمن المضارع البسيط

- When you look at their website, the information is here.
- If / When you heat sugar, it melts.

ويمكن أن نستخدم فعل ناقص في الجزء الثاني من الجملة:

If / When + present simple + modal verb (can)

جملة بها فعل ناقص + جملة في زمن المضارع البسيط

الأفعال الناقصة مثل: must / can

- If you pass me my wallet, I can pay for the tickets now.

٣- قد تأتي If / When في أول الجملة ويوضع بين الجملة الأولى والثانية فاصلة (,) (comma) أو تأتي في وسط الجملة ولا يوضع comma.

- If you press the button, the tablet switches off.
- The tablet switches off if you press this button.

Help your child to use The zero conditional "If".

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم حالة "If" الصفريّة.

٤- وفي السؤال توضع جملة **When If** في آخر السؤال:

① كلمة استفهام

② **do / does / can**

③ **subject (فاعل) + inf**

④ **if / when + present simple?**

- How **can** we get to Giza **if** we miss the bus?

- **Does** your aunt always bake feteer **when** you visit her?

- لاحظ فعل «يكون» **verb to be** في المضارع:

**I** → **am**

**He / She / It** → **is**

**We / You / They** → **are**

- لاحظ فعل «يملك» **verb to have** في المضارع:

**She / He / It** → **has**

**I / We / You / They** → **have**

do they get for the quad bike trip today?

استمع لحادثة سمير مع والده. كم قيمة الخصم التي حصلوا عليها لرحلة الدراجات الرباعية اليوم؟

Transcript

استمع إلى النص:



**Samer** : Dad, here's the information I found <sup>(1)</sup> about quad biking in the desert.

**Dad** : Oh, thanks Samer. Show me.

**Samer** : The company is called Desert Adventures <sup>(2)</sup>. When you look at their website, the information is here. Look! The **tour guide** <sup>(3)</sup> will meet us at the hotel.

**Dad** : OK. What time will he meet us?

**Samer** : He'll meet us at 9 am and he'll drive us into the desert.

**Dad** : And what time do we get back?

**Samer** : We should be back around 2 pm. Lunch is <sup>(4)</sup> in the price. Should we take some water?

**Dad** : Yes. Good idea. How big is the group?

**Samer** : It'll be a group of six.

**Dad** : I like the photos. Everyone is wearing <sup>(5)</sup>. That's good. You have to wear a helmet if you ride a quad bike. How long do we ride the quad bikes for?

**Samer** : One of the trips is 45 minutes, but there's also a trip for an hour. Can we do the hour tour, Dad?

#### Arabic Meaning

١- عن الإنترنت

٢- معامرات الصحراء

٣ مرشد سياحي

٤ مشتمل / منصوص

٥- خودات



**Dad** : Yes, of course. This is going to be a lot of fun. Remember to listen to the guide's **instructions**<sup>(٦)</sup> so that you stay safe.

٦- تعليمات

**Samer** : Yes, I will Dad.

٧- خصم

**Dad** : Good! How do we book the tour if we can't book it on the website?

٨- محفظة

٩- بطاقة ائتمان

**Samer** : We can book it at the office in town. If we book the tour today, it's cheaper. We get a 10% **discount**<sup>(٧)</sup>.

**Dad** : Great. Can you pass me my **wallet**<sup>(٨)</sup>? I need my **credit card**<sup>(٩)</sup> to pay for the tickets. Let's go to the office now.

**Samer** : Sure Dad. Here you are.



اكمل الجمل بالشكل الصحيح للأفعال من بين الأقواس.

1. If you heat (heat) sugar, it melts (melt).
2. If you feel (feel) tired, you can go (go) to bed early.
3. When the clouds are (be) red, it means (mean) there's dust in the sky.
4. My English always improves (get better) when I study (study) the lessons again at home.
5. You can tell (tell) me if you need (need) anything.



اكتب الكلمات الآتية في الترتيب. اكتب الجمل في كراستك.

1. buy / two T-shirts, / you / free / get / one / When / you

When you buy two T-shirts, you get one free.

2. don't water / Plants / if / die / you / them

3. go / want / by bus / Cairo, / to go to / If / you / you can

4. eat / too much cake. / stomach ache / I / if / I can get

5. we / it / my umbrella. / If / can / rains, / use

6. sees / a bee, / my cat / tries / to catch / it. / When / she



4

Match the person with the problem. Write the number of the person in the box.

استخدم العبارة مع if لتكمل المحادثة. اكتب الجمل في كراستك ثم استمع وتأكد.

- 1- **Hazem** : Mom, there's a problem with the freezer. It isn't working.  
**Mom** : The freezer / not work / you not close / the door / properly  
The freezer doesn't work if you don't close the door properly.
- 2- **Leta** : Mrs Manal, can we use pencils in the test?  
**Teacher** : No sorry, you can't. tell / me / now / you / not have / a black pen
- 3- **Karim** : What does this word mean, Sherif?  
**Sherif** : I don't know. look it up / a dictionary / you / not know / a word
- 4- **Dad** : Please turn the music down, Rana. It's too loud!  
**Rana** : But Dad, I / not can / hear / it / be / too low
- 5- **Sami** : What happens / you / block / a person / social media?  
**Dalia** : You don't get any messages from them.

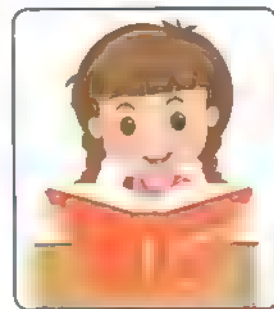
5

Complete the sentences using the verbs in the box.

أكمل النص بنصائح دراسية بالشكل الصحيح للأفعال في القائمة :

**check - concentrate - eat - finish - have - remember - try - work - write**

Study for about 30 minutes but no longer. If you try to study for hours without a break, you can't concentrate. When you have regular breaks, you work better. It's also better to study at the same time each day, even on Fridays and Saturdays. People's brains concentrate better if they have a regular routine. Also, don't study when you're hungry! If you eat a healthy meal at lunchtime, you can finish better in the afternoon. It's helpful if you write down a list of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can check it off the list when you remember studying and feel proud!



# Lesson 2

## Part 2

If we book the tour today, it's cheaper

### Key vocabulary

استمع الى المفردات:



|                |                   |             |              |
|----------------|-------------------|-------------|--------------|
| midnight       | منتصف الليل       | lunchtime   | وقت الغداء   |
| date           | تاريخ اليوم       | great news  | اخبار رائعة  |
| season         | فصل من فصول السنة | sports      | رياضة        |
| Sham El-Nessim | شم النسيم         | party       | حفلة         |
| science class  | حصة العلوم        | the Red Sea | البحر الأحمر |

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

celebrate يحتفل

celebrated

meet يقابل

met

Exercice 1

Exercice 2

#### Prepositions

of time

حروف جر الزمن

- نستخدم حرف الجر (at) بمعنى في أو عند مع الاتي

|    |                                       |                           |
|----|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| At | at five o'clock- 4.30                 | مع الوقت                  |
|    | at night- lunchtime- midnight         | مع بعض اوقات اليوم        |
|    | at sunset - the moment- the same time | مع بعض الكلمات والتعبيرات |
|    | at the airport                        | مع الاماكن الصغيرة        |





- نستخدم حرف الجر (on) بمعنى في مع الاتي

|    |                            |                            |
|----|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| On | on my birthday- school day | مع بعض الكلمات             |
|    | on Friday- Sunday          | مع ايام الاسبوع            |
|    | on August 17 <sup>th</sup> | مع التواريخ                |
|    | on the weekend             | مع كلمة عطلة نهاية الاسبوع |

- نستخدم حرف الجر (in) بمعنى في مع الاتي

|    |  |                    |
|----|--|--------------------|
| In | in 2010 – in 2015                                  | مع السنوات         |
|    | in the morning- in the afternoon<br>in the evening | مع اوقات اليوم     |
|    | in summer- winter- fall- spring                    | مع فصول السنة      |
|    | in March- in October                               | مع الشهور          |
|    | in Cairo- Egypt                                    | مع الاماكن الكبيرة |

1 Complete the sentences with at, in, or on:

اكمل الجمل باستخدام at , in or on

1. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim in spring.
2. Let's meet outside the school at 10:30 am.
3. We had a science class on Monday.
4. They went on a trip to the Red Sea in July.
5. Great news! I'm having a party ..... my birthday!
6. What did you do ..... the weekend?



استمع - متى يفعل التلاميذ هذه الأشياء؟ أكمل الجدول:

## Tapescript



استمع إلى النص:

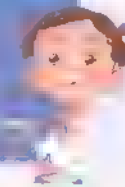


- Hana** : Hi. My name's Hana. I get up every day at 6 o'clock. I have breakfast with my family at 6.30 in the morning. I go to the library on Saturday and I play sports on Sunday . I do homework on Tuesday.
- Youssef** : Hi. I'm Youssef. I get up every day at 7 o'clock. I have breakfast with my grandparents at 7.30 in the morning. I don't go to the library but I play sports on Saturday . I do homework on Thursday.
- Mayar** : Hello. My name's Mayar. I get up every day at 6.30 and I have breakfast with my family at 7 o'clock. I go to the library on Sunday in the afternoon. I don't play sports . I do homework on Monday and Wednesday.
- Nader** : Hi. I'm Nader. I get up every day at 8 o'clock. I have breakfast with my sister at 8.15, then we go to school. I don't go to the library because I have a lot of books at home. I play sports on Wednesday. I do homework every day.

| الوقت     | الوجبة | الوقت     | اليوم    | المهمة                    |
|-----------|--------|-----------|----------|---------------------------|
|           | 6:30   |           |          | Sunday, Tuesday, Thursday |
| 7 o'clock |        |           | Saturday |                           |
|           |        | Sunday pm |          |                           |
|           |        | —         |          | every day                 |



# Activities



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. You have to wear a \_\_\_\_\_ if you ride a quad bike. (2023)

- ☐ a helmet      ☐ b crown      ☐ c scarf      ☐ d cone

2. I go on a \_\_\_\_\_ with my friends to Sharm El-Sheikh. (2023)

- ☐ a ship      ☐ b trip      ☐ c train      ☐ d camel

3. I need my credit card to \_\_\_\_\_ for the ticket. (2023) الفورية

- ☐ a pay      ☐ b run      ☐ c play      ☐ d see

4. I'm very tired. I can't \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a freeze      ☐ b concentrate      ☐ c see      ☐ d pay

5. When you have regular \_\_\_\_\_, you remember more.

- ☐ a bridges      ☐ b breaks      ☐ c books      ☐ d brains

6. I want to eat, I'm very \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a thirsty      ☐ b hungry      ☐ c angry      ☐ d proud

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: (2023) التسمية

**study - healthy - breaks - eat - write**

My teacher gives me some study tips. I always have regular .

I  down a list of what I want to do each time in my study. I always have a  meal at lunchtime. I can't  if I am hungry.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. use - in - Can - the - we - pencils - test?

2. don't water - die - you -  - if - them. (2023)



## Vacation plans

3. about - Study - minutes - 30 - for.

4. you - sugar, -    - heat - melts - it.

### 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. His results                      (be) usually better if he studies well. (2023)

2. He was born                      (at) March. (2023)

3.                      (At) Saturdays, Ayman goes cycling. (2023)

4. When it                      (rain) , we always play indoors. (2023)

5. If you heat water, it                      (boil). (2023)

6. I got many presents                      (at) my birthday. (2023)

7. My father arrives                      (in) six o'clock every day. (2023)

8. My friend John lives                      (at) England. (2023)

### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i play tennis at 3 o'clock

2. How can you get to luxor



# Lesson 3

## Fatima faces her fear

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|            |             |        |                   |
|------------|-------------|--------|-------------------|
| fear       | خوف         | lake   | بحيرة             |
| incredible | مذهل / مدهش | puddle | بركة (مياه صغيرة) |
| secret     | سر          | river  | نهر               |
| calmer     | أهدأ        | stream | جدول مائي         |
| dome       | قبة         | dear   | غزال              |

### Other words

### كلمات أخرى



|                         |   |                  |             |
|-------------------------|---|------------------|-------------|
| famous places           | أماكن مشهورة  | famous monument  | أثر مشهور   |
| the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa | قبة أبو الهوا (جبل صخري يقع على الضفة الغربية للنيل بأسوان) | hill             | تل          |
| great view              | منظر رائع   | typical day      | يوم نموذجي  |
| afraid of               | خائف من   | a teenage girl   | فتاة مراهقة |
| heights                 | مرتفعات   | a drink of water | شربة ماء    |
| white                   | شاحب  | wolf             | ذئب         |
|                         |   | clear            | صافي - نقي  |
|                         |   | bear             | دب          |

### Conjugation of verbs

### التركيب

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

#### Past ماضٍ

#### Present مضارع

#### Past ماضٍ

|            |         |              |       |             |        |
|------------|---------|--------------|-------|-------------|--------|
| disappoint | يحبط    | disappointed | feel  | يشعر        | felt   |
| lift       | يرفع    | lifted       | drink | يشرب        | drank  |
| sparkle    | يتلألأ  | sparkled     | show  | يظهر / يبين | showed |
| reach      | يصل إلى | reached      |       |             |        |
| face       | يواجه   | faced        |       |             |        |
| breathe    | يتنفس   | breathed     |       |             |        |

# Study the following

- 1 It is Amal's first time in Aswan. - إنها أول زيارة لأمل في أسوان.
- 2 She is afraid of heights. - إنها خائفة من المرتفعات.
- 3 Fatima doesn't want to disappoint her cousin. - لا تريد فاطمة أن تحبط ابنة خالتها.
- 4 She decides to face her fear. - تقرر أن تواجه خوفها.
- 5 Fatima feels calmer. She lifts her head to look at the view. - تشعر فاطمة بهدوء أكثر. لقد رفعت رأسها لتتنظر إلى المنظر.
- 6 She feels proud to live in such a fantastic place. - تشعر بالفخر بأنها تعيش في مكان رائع.
- 7 Little Deer runs through the forest. - يجرى الغزال الصغير في الغابة.
- 8 Little Deer comes to a beautiful, blue lake and decides to stop for a drink of water. - لقد وصل الغزال الصغير إلى بحيرة زرقاء جميلة وقرر التوقف لشرب الماء.
- 9 Wolf has a drink from the lake. - يشرب الذئب من البحيرة.
- 10 I can't drink from the same lake as Wolf. - لا أستطيع أن أشرب من نفس البحيرة مثل الذئب.
- 11 The river is cool and clear. - النهر رائع وصافى.
- 12 If Little Bird can be brave, I can be brave, too! - إذا كان بإمكان الطائر الصغير أن يكون شجاعاً، فيمكنني أن أكون شجاعاً أيضاً!
- 13 Little Deer feels happy and proud. - يشعر الغزال الصغير بالسعادة والفخر.

## 1. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

انظر إلى الصور. ماذا تعتقد القصة عن؟

tall buildings ☐ a typical day for a teenage girl ☐

a visit to a famous monument ☐

استمع إلى النص:



Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. She's very excited. She wants to see all the famous places.



Amal shows Fatima a photo. "Can we go visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa? We can climb up the hill to it - there's a great view from there!"





Fatima doesn't know what to say. She wants to make Amal happy, but she has a secret: she is afraid of heights. How can she climb up the hill to the dome?



Fatima doesn't want to disappoint her cousin, so she decides to face her fear. "That's a good idea," she says, "Let's go on Tuesday in the afternoon. We can watch the sunset."



It's Tuesday and the girls are at the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima's face is white. She is very scared. But Amal takes her hand and smiles. "Breathe slowly," she says. "You can do this, Fatima. Now look around you."



Fatima feels calmer. She lifts her head to look at the view. It is incredible. Suddenly she doesn't feel scared any more. She feels proud to live in such a fantastic place!

2

Read and Hold: Again, answer the questions.

اقرأ واستمع مرة أخرى واجب عن الاسئلة .

1. Who comes to visit Fatima?

Her cousin Amal.

2. Why is Fatima not sure about the visit to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa?

3. Why do you think she decides to go?

4. When does she suggest they go to the dome?

5. Why does Amal take Fatima's hand and tell her to breathe slowly?

6. How does Fatima feel after she faces her fear?



## Story

استمع إلى النص:



Listen and read the story: Where does Little Deer live?

استمع واقرا القصة. أين تناول الغزال الصغير المشروب؟

### Little Deer in the Forest

Little Deer runs **through**<sup>(1)</sup> the forest. He comes to a beautiful, blue lake and decides to stop for a drink of water. Just then, he sees **Wolf**<sup>(2)</sup>. Wolf has a drink from the lake.

#### Arabic Meaning

١- خلال

٢- ذئب

٣- صافي

٤- جدول مائي

٥- ينللا

٦- بركة

٧- شجاع

"Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same lake as Wolf. Wolf wants to eat me!"

Little Deer runs on through the forest. Next, he comes to a river.

The river is cool and **clear**<sup>(3)</sup>. But as Little Deer goes to drink from it, he sees Bear. Bear has a drink from the river.

"Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same river as Bear. Bear wants to eat me!"

Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a small **stream**<sup>(4)</sup>. The stream **sparkles**<sup>(5)</sup> in the sun. "Finally!" he says. "I can have a... Oh no!" Little Deer sees Fox. "I can't drink

from the same stream as Fox. Fox wants to eat me!" Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a large **puddle**<sup>(6)</sup>. It isn't blue like the lake. It isn't cool and clear like the river. And it doesn't sparkle like the stream. But Little Deer is very thirsty now!

Just then, Little Deer sees Little Bird. Little Bird sees Little Deer, too, but she isn't afraid. Little Bird has a drink from the puddle.

Little Deer watches Little Bird. "Hmm," he thinks. "If Little Bird can be **brave**<sup>(7)</sup>, I can be brave, too!"

Little Deer goes back to the beautiful, blue lake. He sees Wolf, Bear, and Fox. But this time, Little Deer goes to the lake and has a drink. It is delicious! Little Deer feels happy and proud.

# Pronunciation

1 Look and listen. Then listen again and repeat.

انظر واستمع. ثم استمع مرة أخرى وكرر.

• لاحظ نطق حرف /w/ حيث ينطق مثل حرف (و) في اللغة العربية كما في الكلمات الآتية:

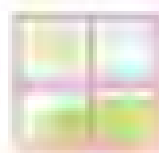
## Ww /w/ words



water مياة



wolf ذئب



window شباك



wet مبلل



whale حوت



west غرب



watch ساعة يد



walk يمشى



warm دافئ



white أبيض



ear يرتدى



web شبكة العنكبوت

● لاحظ نطق حرف /v/ حيث نستخدم الاسنان العلوية والشفاه السفلية مع اخراج الهواء من الفم وتهتز الاحبال الصوتية عند نطق هذا الحرف،

### Vv /v/ words



volcano بركان



violin آلة الكمان



vegetables خضراوات



visit يزور



vase زهرية



van شاحنة



chest صديري



veil حجاب



village قرية



vet طبيب بيطري

1 Listen and circle the word you hear:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي تسمعها

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1- a wet

b vet

2- a veil

b whale

3- a vest

b west

2 Listen. Complete the words with v or w:

استمع واكمل الكلمات بـ V أو W

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1- \_\_\_\_ alk

2- \_\_\_\_ an

3- \_\_\_\_ eb

4- \_\_\_\_ isit

5- \_\_\_\_ arm

6- \_\_\_\_ ase

7- \_\_\_\_ ater

8- \_\_\_\_ indow

9- \_\_\_\_ olcano

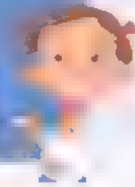
3 Listen, read, and repeat:

استمع واقرأ وردد:

1. The white wolf went for a walk with a woman wearing a watch.

2. I visited a very old village and bought a very nice violin

# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع: اختر الإجابة



1. Hisham was afraid of .....

- ☐ a dogs      ☐ b cats      ☐ c heights      ☐ d lions

2. Hisham and Amged saw great views at the .....

- ☐ a parks      ☐ b Pyramids      ☐ c lands      ☐ d towers

3. Hisham and Amged went to the Pyramids by .....

- ☐ a bike      ☐ b car      ☐ c taxi      ☐ d bus

4. Hisham and Amged climbed the .....

- ☐ a hill      ☐ b mountain      ☐ c bus      ☐ d desert

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. She is trying to ..... her fear of heights.

الدخيرة (2023)

- ☐ a face      ☐ b want      ☐ c play      ☐ d reach

2. You can open the ....., it's very hot.

- ☐ a watch      ☐ b window      ☐ c wolf      ☐ d west

3. My sister is wearing a .....

- ☐ a veil      ☐ b vase      ☐ c violin      ☐ d volcano

4. Do you like eating ..?

- ☐ a volcanoes      ☐ b vegetables      ☐ c villages      ☐ d vans

5. Can you visit the ..... of Abu Al-Hawa?

- ☐ a Dome      ☐ b Wall      ☐ c Minaret      ☐ d Door

6. Noha is very scared. Her face is .....

- ☐ a brown      ☐ b white      ☐ c blue      ☐ d pink

7. He is playing on the .....

- ☐ a vest      ☐ b veil      ☐ c violin      ☐ d vet

8. We should ..... our fear of something.

- ☐ a make      ☐ b face      ☐ c climb      ☐ d lift

Help your child deal with such questions. يساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.





## Vacation plans

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: (الدفعلة - أدارة عرب الصغيرة (2022))

**tourists - view - photo - excited - Dome**

Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It's Amal's first time in Aswan. She is very **excited**. She wants to see all the famous places. Amal shows Fatima a **photo** of Abu Al-Hawa and tells her that they can visit the **Dome** of Abu Al-Hawa and they can also climb up the hill to it. There's a great **view** from there.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: (المتكثرة (2022))

Omar and his sister Logy like going outside on their vacation. They visit many places in Cairo, Giza, Luxor and Aswan. One day Logy asked her brother to go to the Cairo Tower. At first, Omar didn't want to go there because he was **afraid** of heights. Then, he decided to face his fear and go to the Cairo Tower. On Friday they got up early and went to the Cairo Tower by bus. From the Cairo Tower, Omar and Logy could see the great view of the Cairo and the Nile.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d

- The underlined word "**afraid**" means ...  
☐ a scared      ☐ b happy      ☐ c sad      ☐ d hungry
- Omar and Logy saw the great view of the ...  
☐ a Pyramids      ☐ b Nile      ☐ c hotel      ☐ d museum
- The general idea of the text is about a ...  
☐ a school      ☐ b meal      ☐ c vacation      ☐ d book

B- Answer the following questions:

4. How did they go to the Cairo Tower?

5. When did they go to the Cairo Tower?

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. the - forest - Deer - Little - runs - through.

(2022)



2. about - I'm - excited - my - aviation.

(2023)

3. comes - to - visit - Hala - visit?

4. her - decides - to - fear - face - to.

(2023)

5. feels - happy - proud - to live - place - this - in.

**6 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

**Little Deer in the forest**

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

To your friend Heba to tell her about the story of Little Deer. Your name is Salwa and your email address is salwa15@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is heba26@gmail.com.

**Guiding questions**

- 1- What is this story about?
- 2- What did you learn from the story?

**New Message**

To ..... Cc Bcc

From .....

Subject .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Lessons 4&5

## Writing & Project



### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|            |                 |
|------------|-----------------|
| fun        | متعة            |
| carnival   | احتفال / مهرجان |
| waterfalls | شلالات          |
| blog       | مدونة           |

|                        |               |
|------------------------|---------------|
| theaters               | مسارح         |
| the simulation theater | مسرح المحاكاة |
| destination            | وجهة وصول     |
| realistic              | حقيقي         |

### Other words

### كلمات أخرى

|                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| exciting         | مثيرة             |
| including        | تشتمل على         |
| around           | حول               |
| special birthday | عيد ميلاد خاص     |
| surprise         | مفاجأة            |
| world of fantasy | عالم من الخيال    |
| amazing rides    | العاب ملاهي مذهلة |
| brave            | شجاع              |
| the ocean        | المحيط            |
| per night        | في الليلة         |

|                         |                      |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| double room             | غرفة لفردين          |
| shows                   | عروض                 |
| stores                  | محلات                |
| section                 | قسم                  |
| water rides             | العاب ملاهي مائية    |
| sound and light effects | تأثيرات الصوت والضوء |
| snowy mountains         | جبال ثلجية           |
| brochure                | كتيب                 |

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

|       |                 |
|-------|-----------------|
| guess | يخمن            |
| relax | يستريح / يسترخي |
| watch | يشاهد           |

|         |
|---------|
| guessed |
| relaxed |
| watched |

|      |       |
|------|-------|
| feel | يشعر  |
| swim | يعوم  |
| cost | يتكلف |

|      |
|------|
| felt |
| swam |
| cost |

Help your child to learn new words about places in Egypt.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم مفردات جديدة عن أماكن في مصر.





## Study the following

- 1 I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival.  
- أنا مع عائلتي بسبب المفاجأة الخاصة بعيد ميلاد في المهرجان.
- 2 When you arrive at the park you are suddenly in a world of fantasy.  
- عندما تصل إلى الحديقة فانت فجأة تدخل في عالم من الخيال.
- 3 There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster and theatres where you can watch shows.  
- يوجد ألعاب الملاهي الرائعة لكي تجربها مثل قطار الرعب والمسارح حيث تستطيع أن تشاهد عروض.
- 4 In the afternoon, Daa and I want to go to the simulation theater  
- في الظهيرة أردنا أنا وأبي الذهاب إلى مسرح المحاكاة.
- 5 You sit in your seat with big screens all around you and there are sound and light effects.  
- تجلس على مقعد وحولك شاشات كبيرة ويوجد مؤثرات الصوت والضوء.
- 6 And it feels like you're in different places around the world snowy mountains, even under the ocean.  
- وتشعر انك في أماكن مختلفة حول العالم مثل جبال جليدية أو حتى تحت المحيط.
- 7 Sharm El-Sheikh is an amazing holiday destination  
- شرم الشيخ وجهة رائعة لقضاء العطلات.
- 8 Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea  
- شرم الشيخ مدينة رائعة مزدحمة في مصر بجوار البحر الأحمر.
- 9 There are lots of things to see and do.  
- يوجد الكثير من الأشياء يمكن أن تراها وتفعلها.



## Read and answer the questions

اقرأ تدوينة «نشوى»، واجيب عن الأسئلة.

1. Where is she?
2. Who is she with?
3. Why is she there?



Tuesday June 3rd

استمع إلى النص:



### All the fun of the Carnival!

Today is my birthday and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday party (1) at the Carnival! I want to tell you all about it.

When you arrive at the park, you are welcomed (2) in a world of fantasy - it's really amazing (3). There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster (if you're brave!), and theaters where you can watch shows. There are places to eat and stores, too.

The children's section (4) has nine rides including the Giant Teacup (5). We have tickets for that at 10 o'clock. My brother loves water rides, so he wants to go on some of those later this morning. At eleven thirty, we have tickets for the Waterfalls ride. It has some high sections so it's a bit scary, and you get very wet! In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the Snow Mountain Theater (6). You sit in your seat with big screens all around you, and there are sound and light effects. It feels like you're in different places around the world, snowy mountains even under the ocean. It's very realistic (7) - I can't wait! What a great birthday present (8) - thanks Mom and Dad!

### Match the words

- ١- مفاجأة
- ٢- فحاة
- ٣- مشير
- ٤- قسم
- ٥- القطار الشرفى
- ٦- مسرح المحاكاة
- ٧- واقعية
- ٨- هدية



# السياحة في شرم الشيخ

اقرأ التدوينة مرة أخرى. ضع الأنشطة في الترتيب الصحيح من ١ - ٣.

- a. simulation theater .....
- b. Orient Train 1
- c. Waterfalls ride .....

## Sharm El-Sheikh - an amazing holiday destination!



استمع إلى النص:



For only LE 1000 per night, per person in a double room.

Sharm El-Sheikh is an ..... (1) and ..... (2) town in Egypt by the Red Sea (3). There are lots of things to see and do.

- ١- رائعة
- ٢- مزدحمة
- ٣- البحر الأحمر
- ٤- يسرّحى
- ٥- دير سانت كاترين

- swim in the sea
- ..... (4) on the beach



- go quad biking in the desert



- visit ..... (5)



- eat good food

Take Let's Ride! bus from Giza Square every afternoon at 3 pm for LE 500 only!

Help your child to learn how to write a blog.  
Help your child learn about Sharm El-Sheikh.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف يكتب تدوينه.  
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن مدينة شرم الشيخ.





# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We visited St Catherine's ..... in 2021.

- ☐ a tower                      ☐ b hill                      ☐ c monastery                      ☐ d bridge

2. I'm ..... I'm not afraid of heights.

- ☐ a sad                      ☐ b early                      ☐ c scary                      ☐ d brave

3. I have a ..... to Alexandria. I travel by train.

(2023)

- ☐ a book                      ☐ b ticket                      ☐ c pen                      ☐ d mobile

4. I get very ..... at the water rides.

- ☐ a tall                      ☐ b wet                      ☐ c dry                      ☐ d late

5. After a long time, we arrived our .....

(2023)

- ☐ a destination                      ☐ b pollution                      ☐ c population                      ☐ d information

6. The ..... ride is very scary and you get wet.

(2023)

- ☐ a mountain                      ☐ b waterfalls                      ☐ c caves                      ☐ d desert

7. We can watch shows at the .....

(2023)

- ☐ a station                      ☐ b theater                      ☐ c hospital                      ☐ d farm

8. Sharm El-Sheikh is a ..... in Egypt.

- ☐ a hotel                      ☐ b town                      ☐ c station                      ☐ d park

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**monastery - camels - tourists - biking - food**

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea. Many  like to visit it because there are a lot of things they can do there. Tourists can go quad  in the desert. They like visiting St Catherine's . They also like riding on  and relaxing at the beach.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. in - You - quad biking - the desert - go - can.



2. want - the - I - to go - simulation - to - theater.

3. is - an amazing - place - destination - El-Sheikh - holiday.

4. brochure - is - What - your - about?

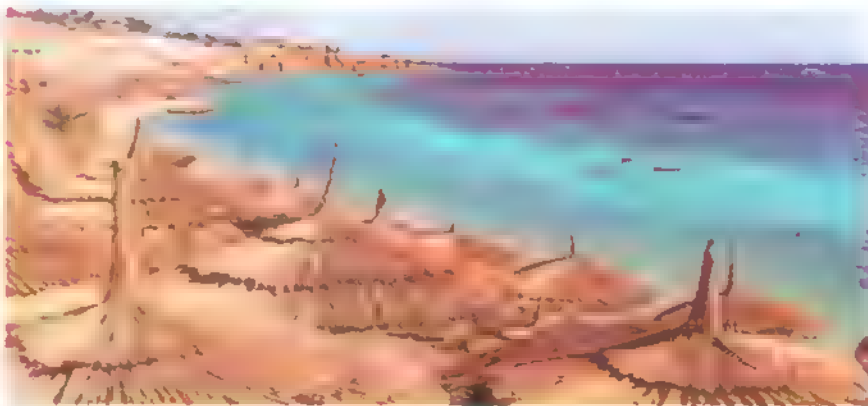
5. go - lets - the theme - park - to.

(2023)

- 4 Write a blog of Fifty (50) words to your friend Yasser about your visit to Sharm el-Sheikh. Your name is Essam: اكتب ندوية من ٥٠ كلمة:

interesting - the Red Sea

Friday August 7th



- 5 Punctuate the following:

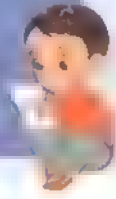
ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. let s make a tourist brochure

2. what can you see at sharm El-Sheikh



# Review



## Key vocabulary



يزور المتحف



يلتقط صور



متحف قصر المنيل



يركب دراجات رباعية في الصحراء



يركب قطار الرعب (في الملاهي)



يتسلق مئذنة باب زويلة



يستكشف الاسواق

## Other words

## كلمات أخرى



vacation

أجازة

trip

رحلة

seats

مقاعد (ثابتة)

camivals

إحتفالات / مهرجانات

activities

أنشطة

the sunset

غروب الشمس

social media

وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

world of fantasy

عالم من الخيال

the ocean

المحيط

waterfalls

شلالات

theaters

مسارح

water rides

العاب ملاهي مائية

heights

المرتفعات

forest

غابة

## Adjectives

### صفات

excited

متحمس

interesting

شيق

busy

مزدحم

exciting

مثيرة

cool

رائع

realistic

واقعي / حقيقي

## Conjugation of verbs

### المضارع

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

die

يموت

died

pay

يدفع (مالاً)

paid

book

يحجز

booked

choose

يختار

chose

concentrate

يركز

concentrated

take

يأخذ / يستغرق

took

### Exercises

### The zero conditional "If"

١- نستخدم الحالة الصفريّة للتحدث عن حقائق أو الأشياء الصحيحة في الحاضر.

٢- يتكون من:

① If / When + Present simple + Present simple.

جملة في زمن المضارع البسيط + جملة في زمن المضارع البسيط

- If / When you **heat** sugar, it **melts**.

⊙ ويمكن أن نستخدم فعل ناقص في الجزء الثاني من الجملة:

② If / When + present simple + modal verb (can)

+ جملة في زمن المضارع البسيط + جملة بها فعل ناقص

الأفعال الناقصة مثل: **must / can**

- If you pass me the wallet, I can pay for the tickets now.





## Vacation plans

٣- قد تأتي **If / When** في أول الجملة ويوضع بين الجملة الأولى والثانية فاصلة (,) (comma) أو تأتي في وسط الجملة ولا يوضع **comma**.

- If / When you need anything you can tell me.

- You can tell me **if / when** you need anything.

٤- وفي السؤال توضع جملة **If / When** في آخر السؤال:

**can / do / does + subject (فاعل) + inf + if / when + present simple?** كلمة استفهام

- How **can** we get to Giza **if** we miss the bus?

- **Does** your aunt always bake feteer **when** you visit her?

- لاحظ فعل **verb to be** يكون، في المضارع:

|                       |                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| I → am                | He / She / It → is |
| We / You / They → are |                    |

- لاحظ فعل **verb to have** يملك، في المضارع:

|                            |
|----------------------------|
| She / He / It → has        |
| I / We / You / They → have |

١- نستخدم حرف الجر **(at)** بمعنى (في) أو عند مع الوقت ومع كلمات:

**midnight, lunchtime / ..... o'clock**

**at** → 3 o'clock, lunchtime, midnight /, weekend.

**Prepositions  
of time**

حروف جر الزمن

٢- نستخدم حرف الجر **(on)** بمعنى (في) مع أيام الأسبوع والتواريخ وبعض الكلمات:

**on** → Sunday, birthday, March 25 / weekend / school days

٣- نستخدم حرف الجر **(in)** بمعنى (في) مع الشهور وفصول السنة والسنوات وفترات النهار:

**in** → July, winter (spring - summer - fall), 2020, in the morning.

- لاحظ الآتي: مع فترات اليوم نستخدم **in** ما عدا **at night**.





## Answers to Texts

### Lesson 1

#### A visit to the Bab Zuweila minaret

- 1 Last week I went to the Bab Zuweila minaret. My brother and I climbed the minaret. We watched the sunset over the city. Then, we explored the souks near the minaret and bought amazing things. That was cool. In the evening, we went home. We had a great time on our vacation.

### Lesson 2

#### Little Deer in the forest

- 2
- New Message**
- To heba26@gmail.com Cc Bcc
- From salwa15@yahoo.com
- Subject Tiger and Little Deer

Dear Heba,

I'm happy to write to you. I'd like to tell you about the story of Little Deer in the forest. Little Deer comes to a lake and stops for a drink of water. He sees a wolf. He thinks the wolf wants to eat him. He runs away. Finally he decides to be brave. He goes back to the lake and has a drink. I enjoyed this story. See you soon.

Love,  
Salwa

## Lesson 111

## Your visit to Sharm el-Sheikh

3

Friday August 7th

## Sharm El-Sheikh amazing town

Hi, I'm in Sharm El-Sheikh now. Yesterday we booked tickets online and went by plane. Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea. We will swim in the sea and relax at the beach. We can visit St Catherine's monastery. It's my favorite holiday destination. Do you think it's a nice place for vacation? 🌴



## Al-Azhar Test

## Rollercoaster

4

Rollercoasters are my favorite ride. I like riding them. I ride the rollercoaster with my father. My father always books tickets online. In the theme park, there are lots of rides. But if you are brave, you can ride the rollercoaster.

## Activity - Unit 3

## Your visit to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa

5

I like going to Aswan. I can visit many amazing places there. I can go with my family. We can visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa and climb up the hill to it. There's a great view from there. At first, I feel scared but I face my fear and climb the hill.



# Al-Azhar Test

الاختبار الخاص بالأزهر الشريف

## 1 Read and complete the dialog:

( أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة: )

time - park - Today - Where - birthday

A : Hi, when is your birthday?

B : 1 ..... is my birthday.

A : Happy 2 .....

B : Thanks.

A : 3 ..... will you go?

B : I'll go to the 4 ..... in Giza City.

A : Have a nice 5 .....

## 2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

|       |       |        |            |      |     |
|-------|-------|--------|------------|------|-----|
| visit | Cairo | Giza   | Alexandria | deer |     |
| ride  | visit | forest | go         | ride |     |
| at    | in    | on     | fall       | at   | ... |
| lion  | wolf  | deer   | morning    | lion |     |
| June  | March | April  | have       | June |     |

## 3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

I'm Noha. I live in Cairo. Rasha is my cousin. She comes to visit me. It is the first time in Cairo. She's very excited. She wants to see all the famous places. Rasha loves the Egyptian museum and the Cairo Tower.

### A. Answer the following questions:

1. Who is Rasha?

2. Where does Noha live?

3. Why does Rasha come to Cairo?





## Vacation plans

### B. Choose the correct answer:

4. Rasha wants to see all the famous ..... in Cairo. (places - schools - farms)

5. Rasha loves the Egyptian ..... and the Cairo Tower. (pyramid - museum - park)

### 4 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. If we ..... by bus, it is quicker.

a goes

b went

c go

d going

2. Sama is afraid of heights, but she tries to face her .....

a secret

b face

c fear

d view

3. We had a science class ..... Monday.

a at

b on

c in

d of

4. I study better when I ..... a healthy meal.

a eating

b ate

c eat

d eats

5. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim ..... spring.

a in

b at

c on

d into

6. The film starts ..... 10 pm.

a in

b on

c at

d for

7. The ..... ride is very scary, and you get wet.

a hills

b mountains

c waterfalls

d deserts

8. How much does this pen ..... ?

a post

b cost

c fast

d catch

9. I go to the beach, It's a nice place to .....

a damage

b hurt

c relax

d guess

10. A ..... is a brown animal with long horns.

a hen

b lizard

c dear

d donkey

**5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. are - the - The souks - near - minaret.

2. get - at - o'clock- up - ! - seven.

3. Abu - is - the - Al-Hawa - Dome - Al-Hawa - of?

4. puddle - Dear - a large - to - The little - comes.

5. first - Cairo - at - in - Helen's - time.

**6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:**

اكتب فقرة إرشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

**Rollercoasters**

**ride - father - tickets - brave - online**



# Test

اختبر نفسك

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة



1. We should ..... to go to good places.

- ☐ a eat                      ☐ b plan                      ☐ c write                      ☐ d visit

2. We need to choose a ..... place.

- ☐ a busy                      ☐ b quiet                      ☐ c crowded                      ☐ d dirty

3. We should think how to ..... to the place.

- ☐ a leave                      ☐ b get                      ☐ c play                      ☐ d see

4. We should think about the ..... time.

- ☐ a late                      ☐ b suitable                      ☐ c early                      ☐ d hard

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. There are amazing ..... to try like the rollercoaster.

(2023)

- ☐ a groups                      ☐ b rides                      ☐ c flights                      ☐ d tickets

2. We can ride on the rollercoaster at the .....

(2023)

- ☐ a library                      ☐ b theme park                      ☐ c museum                      ☐ d minaret

3. I fell in a ..... and my clothes get wet.

(المعبر) (2023)

- ☐ a glass                      ☐ b puddle                      ☐ c minaret                      ☐ d height

4. Noha is ..... of heights, she can't climb the minaret.

(2023)

- ☐ a excited                      ☐ b afraid                      ☐ c proud                      ☐ d sure

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: الخمر - اختار - صياغة المشاعر (2023)

study - healthy - breaks - eat - write

My teacher gives me some study tips. I always have regular .....

I ..... down a list of what I want to do each time in my study. I always

have a ..... meal at lunchtime. I can't ..... if I am hungry.



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Sara will go to Cairo with her brother Hema. They think about trying some new places. They want to visit the Manial Palace Museum on Sunday. Sara wants to visit the Cairo Tower on Monday. Hema wants to climb the Bab Zuweila minaret on Tuesday. They want to explore the Souks on Wednesday. They want to ride on a rollercoaster in a theme park in Giza on Thursday. They will return home on Friday.

##### A- Choose the correct answer:

1. Sara and her brother Hema will go to . . . . .

- ☐ a Luxor                      ☐ b Cairo                      ☐ c Aswan                      ☐ d Alexandria

2. Hema wants to ..... the Bab Zuweila minaret.

- ☐ a play                      ☐ b climb                      ☐ c go                      ☐ d help

3. Sara wants to visit the Cairo Tower on .....

- ☐ a Sunday                      ☐ b Monday                      ☐ c Friday                      ☐ d Thursday

##### B- Answer the following questions:

4. What do they do on Sunday?

.....

5. When will they return home?

.....

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - very - The - exciting - rollercoaster.

.....

2. does - have - he - a drink - Little Deer?

.....

3. from - there - was - view - the minaret - great.

.....





### Vacation plans

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I was nervous ..... (at) my first school day.

2. If we go by bus, it ..... (be) quicker.

(2023)

#### 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i m having a party on Tuesday.

2. are you busy on friday?

#### 8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your visit to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

#### Guiding questions

1- Where's the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa?

2- What can you see at the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa?



# General Revision on Units 1, 2 & 3

## مراجعة عامة على الوحدات ١ - ٢ - ٣

### مراجعة على المفردات Revision on vocabulary

#### (Unit 1)



apartment  
عمارة سكنية



chemicals  
مواد كيميائية



harvest  
يحصد



plant  
يزرع



natural fertilizer  
سماد طبيعي



roof  
سطح

#### (Unit 2)



hare  
أرنب بري (أرنب كبير)



monkey  
قرد



elephant  
فيل



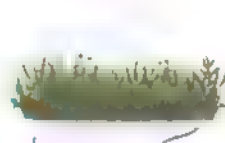
mouse  
فأر



mice  
فئران



forest  
غابة



grass  
حشائش



stomach  
معدة



lizard  
سحلية



fish  
سمكة



cat  
قطعة



bird  
طائر

(Unit 3)



يزور المتحف



take photos  
يلتقط صور



the Museum of the Nile  
متحف قصر المنيل



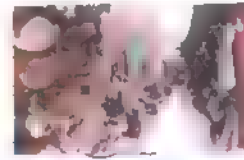
ride on a bicycle in the desert  
يركب دراجات رباعية في الصحراء



ride on a camel  
يركب قطار الرعب (في الملاهي)



go to the roller coaster  
يتسلق مئذنة باب زويلة



go to the roller coaster  
يستكشف الاسواق

Other words



(Unit 1)

|                 |               |                    |                   |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| Mini forest     | غابة صغيرة    | pet                | حيوان أليف        |
| organization    | منظمة / مؤسسة | selfish giant      | العنقاء الأناني   |
| special         | خاص           | the Western Desert | الصحراء الغربية   |
| nature          | الطبيعة       | hang out           | يقضي وقت / يتسكع  |
| wildlife        | الحياة البرية | miss               | يفتقد شخص أو مكان |
| railway line    | خط سكة حديد   | well               | بصحة جيدة         |
| local residents | سكان محليون   |                    |                   |

(Unit 2)

|             |              |                 |                        |
|-------------|--------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| laboratory  | معمل         | Gymnasium = Gym | صالة ألعاب رياضية      |
| tablet      | كمبيوتر لوحي | fountain        | نافورة                 |
| equipment   | معدات        | laptop          | كمبيوتر محمول          |
| experiments | تجارب علمية  | well-being      | منفعة / سعادة / رفاهية |
| pet         | حيوان أليف   |                 |                        |

### Unit 3

|              |                         |                  |                   |
|--------------|-------------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| vacation     | أجازة                   | world of fantasy | عالم من الخيال    |
| trip         | رحلة                    | the ocean        | المحيط            |
| seats        | مقاعد (ثابتة)           | waterfalls       | شلالات            |
| carnivals    | إحتفالات / مهرجانات     | theaters         | مسارح             |
| activities   | أنشطة                   | water rides      | العاب ملاهى مائية |
| the sunset   | غروب الشمس              | heights          | المرتفعات         |
| social media | وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي | forest           | غابة              |

## Adjectives

### Unit 2

|          |       |           |                  |
|----------|-------|-----------|------------------|
| nervous  | متوتر | organized | منظم             |
| calm     | هادئ  | clever    | ماهر - شاطر      |
| shy      | خجول  | messy     | فوضوي / غير منظم |
| polite   | مؤدب  | kind      | عطوف             |
| friendly | ودود  |           |                  |

### Unit 1

|             |       |           |               |
|-------------|-------|-----------|---------------|
| excited     | متحمس | exciting  | مثير          |
| interesting | شيق   | cool      | رائع          |
| busy        | مزدحم | realistic | واقعي / حقيقي |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Irregular verbs

| Present | مضارع          | Past     | ماضي | Present    | مضارع        | Past       | ماضي |
|---------|----------------|----------|------|------------|--------------|------------|------|
| Unit 1  |                |          |      |            |              |            |      |
| click   | ينقر / يضغط زر | clicked  |      | find out   | يكتشف / يعرف | found out  |      |
| pass    | يمر            | passed   |      | become     | يصبح         | became     |      |
| cycle   | يركب دراجة     | cycled   |      | drive      | يقود         | drove      |      |
| share   | يشارك          | shared   |      | build      | يبنى         | built      |      |
|         |                |          |      | sing       | يغني / يفرّد | sang       |      |
|         |                |          |      | hang out   | يتسكع        | hung out   |      |
| Unit 2  |                |          |      |            |              |            |      |
| offer   | يعرض           | offered  |      | show       | يعرض / يبين  | showed     |      |
| borrow  | يستلف / يستعير | borrowed |      | feel       | يشعر         | felt       |      |
| cry     | يبكي           | cried    |      | take place | يحدث         | took place |      |
| pet     | يُدلّل         | petted   |      | lie        | يرقد         | lay        |      |

(Unit 3)

|             |        |              |        |               |       |
|-------------|--------|--------------|--------|---------------|-------|
| die         | يموت   | died         | pay    | يدفع (مالا)   | paid  |
| book        | يحجز   | booked       | choose | يختار         | chose |
| explore     | يستكشف | explored     | take   | يأخذ / يستغرق | took  |
| concentrate | يركز   | concentrated |        |               |       |

## Revision on Grammar مراجعة على القواعد

### 1 Present Simple تenses

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات وافعال روتينية وحقائق علمية.

| Statement جملة                        | Negative نفى                                 | Question سؤال       |
|---------------------------------------|--|---------------------|
| I / We / You / They + inf. مصدر الفعل | + don't / never + inf.                       | Do + فاعل + inf.?   |
| He / She / It + inf. + (s-es-ies)     | + doesn't + inf. / never + inf. + (s-es-ies) | Does + فاعل + inf.? |

Ex. He usually goes to school by bus.

Ex. I visit my cousins every week.

Ex. We don't go to school on Friday.

Ex. - He doesn't live in a city.

Ex. - Do you like pizza?

- Yes, I do.

- No, I don't.

Ex. Does Ahmed see his friends on weekends?

- Yes, he does.

- No, he doesn't.

### 2 Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

Always (100%)  $\xrightarrow{\text{إلى}}$  Never (0%)

| Indefinite (غير محددة) |        | Definite (محددة) |                |
|------------------------|--------|------------------|----------------|
| always                 | دائما  | once             | مرة            |
| usually                | عادة   | twice            | مرتين          |
| often                  | غالبا  | three times      | ثلاث مرات      |
| sometimes              | أحيانا | every day / week | كل يوم / اسبوع |
| rarely                 | نادرا  |                  |                |
| never                  | أبدا   |                  |                |

نستخدم ظروف التكرار للإجابة عن سؤال How often.

Ex. How often do you play football?

- I play football twice a week. / I sometimes play football.

3

### الصفات المنتهية بـ «who»

1

- نستخدم (who) بمعنى الذي / التي للمفرد أو الديمر ، اللاتي للجمع لتحل محل الفاعل العاقل في الجملة.

Ex. Sarah is the girl **who** always wins the race.

1

- نستخدم (which) بمعنى الذي / التي لتحل محل الفاعل غير العاقل (الحيوانات / الأشياء) في الجملة.

Ex. This is the picture **which** I draw.

1

- نستخدم (where) بمعنى حيث لتحل محل الأماكن في الجملة.

Ex. This is the building **where** we do physical education

4

### الصفات المنتهية بـ «ed» والصفات المنتهية بـ «ing»

١. نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) للشئ أو الشخص الذي لديه أو يمتلك الصفة أو ما يشعر به الشخص

كما بالمثال :

Ex. I am **excited**!

أنا متحمس!

٢. ولكن نستخدم الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) للشئ أو الشخص المسبب للصفة أو الشئ المسبب للشعور كما

بالمثال :

Ex. The football game **s exciting** (هنا لعبة كرة القدم هي المسببة للحماس)

5

### الحالة الصفرية "If" The zero conditional

نستخدم When

١- نستخدم الحالة الصفرية للحدث عن حقائق أو لأشياء الصحيحة في الحاضر.

٢- تتكون من:

1

If / When + Present simple + Present simple.

جمعه في من ليد - بسيط جملة في من المصارع بسيط

Ex. If / When you **heat** sugar, it **melts**.

⊙ ويمكن أن نستخدم فعل ناقص في الجزء الثاني من الجملة:



**If / When + present simple + model verb (can)**

جملة في زمن المضارع البسيط

جملة بها فعل ناقص

الأفعال الناقصة مثل: **must / can**

**Ex.** If you pass me my wallet, I can pay for the tickets now.

٣- قد تأتي **If / When** في أول الجملة ويوضع بين الجملة الأولى والثانية فاصلة (,) (comma) أو تأتي في وسط الجملة ولا يوضع **comma** ،

**Ex.** If / When you need anything you can tell me.

**Ex.** You can tell me **if / when** you need anything.

٤- وفي السؤال توضع جملة **If / When** في آخر السؤال:

**can / do / does + subject (فاعل) + inf + if / when + present simple?** كلمة استفهام

**Ex.** How **can** we get to Giza **if** we miss the bus?

**Ex.** Does your aunt always bake feteer **when** you visit her?

6

١- نستخدم حرف الجر (**at**) بمعنى (في) أو (عند) مع الوقت ومع كلمات:

**at** → 3 o'clock / lunchtime / midnight.

**Ex.** I get up **at** seven o'clock.

٢- نستخدم حرف الجر (**on**) بمعنى (في) مع أيام الأسبوع والتواريخ وبعض الكلمات:

**on** → Sunday / birthday / March 25 / weekend / school days

**Ex.** We travel to Aswan **on** Friday.

٣- نستخدم حرف الجر (**in**) بمعنى (في) مع الشهور وفصول السنة والسنوات وفترات النهار:

**in** → July / winter (spring - summer - fall) / 2020 / in the morning.

- لاحظ الآتي: مع فترات اليوم نستخدم **in** ما عدا **at night** :

**Ex.** My birthday is **in** August.

**Ex.** They go to work **in** the morning.

# General Test - Units (1 - 2 & 3)

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Nabil went to a new school .....

- ☐ a last month      ☐ b last year      ☐ c last week      ☐ d yesterday

2. Ahmed is good at .....

- ☐ a English      ☐ b Arabic      ☐ c Math      ☐ d Science

3. Ahmed helps his friends with the .....

- ☐ a homework      ☐ b play      ☐ c PE      ☐ d building

4. Sherif is polite and .....

- ☐ a bad      ☐ b shy      ☐ c tall      ☐ d short

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I want to climb the Bab Zuweila ..... one day.

- ☐ a dome      ☐ b minaret      ☐ c souk      ☐ d museum

2. Cats are ....., so you don't need to take them for a walk. (2023)

- ☐ a busy      ☐ b free      ☐ c messy      ☐ d independent

3. We have one ..... on each hand.

- ☐ a finger      ☐ b knee      ☐ c ankle      ☐ d thumb

4. Students need laboratories to do .....

- ☐ a experiments      ☐ b homework      ☐ c sports      ☐ d projects

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: (2023) من صنف - إدارة بن

market - volunteers - space - grow - fruits

There's a community garden on the roof of my uncle's apartment block. The community garden is a big green . People can  vegetables to eat. They can also sell them in the . We can grow all this food in the middle of the city. Some  from the neighborhood come and help us. I sometimes help my uncle in his community garden.

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Our neighbor is the person who lives next door to us. Mr Walid is our new neighbor. He moved to his new house yesterday. He is kind and polite. We helped him to **organize** his house. We showed him the places where he can buy his things. He invited us to have dinner with him and his family today in his new house. His family thanked us for helping them. They are really good neighbors.

##### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "**organize**" means \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a carry      ☐ b tidy      ☐ c invite      ☐ d move
- The neighbor is the person who lives \_\_\_\_\_ door to us.  
☐ a behind      ☐ b on      ☐ c out      ☐ d next
- Mr Walid moved to a new house .....  
☐ a last week      ☐ b yesterday      ☐ c last year      ☐ d last month

##### B- Answer the following questions:

4. What did Mr Walid do when they helped him?

5. How did they help Mr Walid?

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. do - farmers - rice - Where - grow?

2. ride - on - the - \_\_\_\_\_ - rollercoaster.

3. the community - \_\_\_\_\_ - work - garden - you - in?





**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The weather is very cold ..... (on) winter.

2. She never ..... (eat) healthy food.

**7 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how does Mona feel today

**8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

**Your study tips**

Guiding phr

concentrate - healthy meal



2

4

# Myself and others

## Celebrate good times!

احتفل بالأوقات السعيدة!



### Objectives of the Unit

### أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, and write about celebrations.  
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويكتب عن الاحتفالات.
2. Talk about things that are happening at or around the moment of speaking using the present continuous.  
- يتحدث الطالب عن أشياء تحدث لحظة الكلام أو في غضون استخدامها باستخدام زمن المضارع المستمر.
3. Understand the meaning of words and phrases in a text.  
- يفهم الطالب معنى كلمات وعبارات في نص.
4. Learn to estimate volumes.  
- يتعلم الطالب عن تقدير الأحجام.
5. Understand the difference between the sounds /ei/ and /e/.  
- يفهم الطالب الفرق بين الصوتين /ei/ و /e/.
6. Write a formal email invitation.  
- يكتب الطالب دعوة رسمية بالبريد الإلكتروني.
7. Research and make a poster about a celebration.  
- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث وملصق عن احتفال.

# Lesson 1

## Can you blow up some balloons?

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



**balloons**  
بالونات



**streamers**  
أشرطة الزينة



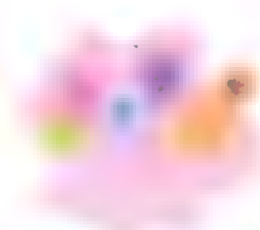
**birthday cake**  
تورتة عيد ميلاد



**invitation**  
دعوة

### Birthday celebration

احتفال عيد ميلاد



**fireworks**  
ألعاب نارية



**playlist** قائمة تشغيل (أغاني)

### Birthday celebrations phrases

عبارات تستخدم في احتفالات عيد الميلاد

the streamers تعليق أشرطة الزينة

the invitations

إرسال الدعوات

the fireworks

إطلاق الألعاب النارية

a playlist

عمل قائمة تشغيل (أغاني)

decorating the birthday cake

تزيين تورتة عيد الميلاد

blow up some balloons

ملء (نفخ) بعض البالونات بالهواء

**invitation**

دعوة

You write it to ask someone to come to a party or event.





Celebrate good times!

## Other words

## الكلمات الأخرى



|                |                |        |                    |
|----------------|----------------|--------|--------------------|
| birthday party | حفلة عيد ميلاد | RSVP*  | من فضلك، أرسل الرد |
| scissors       | مقص            | adult  | شخص بالغ / راشد    |
| string         | خيوط           | yard   | فناء               |
| candle         | شمعة           | letter | خطاب               |



## Phrases and Prepositions

## عبارات وحروف جر

|                    |                   |                      |                         |
|--------------------|-------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| of course          | بالتأكيد / بالطبع | everyone has to .... | يجب على الجميع أن ..... |
| get dark           | تُظلم             | let me know          | أخبرني / بلغني          |
| tie ..... together | يربط ..... معاً   | hang.....up          | يعلق                    |
| I'm not sure yet.  | لست متأكداً بعد.  |                      |                         |

## Conjugation of verbs

## مضارع

### Regular verbs

### أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

### أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع      | Past ماضٍ   | Present مضارع        | Past ماضٍ |
|--------------------|-------------|----------------------|-----------|
| pass يمرر          | passed      | hang up يعلق         | hung up   |
| tie يربط           | tied        | blow up يملأ بالهواء | blew up   |
| decorate يزين      | decorated   | send يرسل            | sent      |
| represent يرمز إلى | represented | let off يطلق         | let off   |
| celebrate يحتفل    | celebrated  |                      |           |

## Study the following

- Will you pass me the scissors, please? هل يمكن أن تمرر لي المقص من فضلك؟
- I'm hanging up the streamers. أقوم بتعليق أشرطة الزينة.
- I'm tying the streamers together. أقوم بربط أشرطة الزينة معاً.
- Can you blow up some balloons? هل يمكنك ملء بعض البالونات بالهواء؟
- They're decorating the birthday cake. يقومون بتزيين تورتة عيد الميلاد.
- Are you sending the invitations? هل تقومين بإرسال الدعوات؟
- Dalida is going to make a playlist on her phone. ستقوم داليدا بعمل قائمة تشغيل أغاني على هاتفها.
- We need an adult to let off the fireworks. نحتاج لشخص بالغ ليطلق الألعاب النارية.

\* RSVP = "répondez s'il vous plaît." (French) = "Respond, if you please." (English)



1

## الدرس الأول: عيد ميلاد نسمة

استمع واقرأ. لمن حفل عيد الميلاد؟

## Tapescript



استمع إلى النص:



- Hani** : Hi Youssef, what are you doing?
- Youssef** : Hi, Hani. I'm preparing the streamers<sup>(1)</sup> for my sister Nesma's, party. Can you help me?
- Hani** : Sure. What can I do, cousin?
- Youssef** : Will you pass<sup>(2)</sup> me the scissors, please? I'm tying<sup>(3)</sup> the streamers together and I need to cut the string<sup>(4)</sup>. Can you also pass<sup>(5)</sup> the balloons<sup>(5)</sup>. We need to hang those up too.
- Hani** : Of course! What are your other sisters doing? Are they helping?
- Youssef** : Dalida and Noha? Yes, they are. They're preparing the birthday cake<sup>(6)</sup>. They have candles for it, too. Oh, there's Amina. Amina! Are you sending the invitations<sup>(7)</sup>?
- Amina** : Hi Youssef. Yes, I am. But I'm sending everyone email invitations<sup>(8)</sup>.
- Youssef** : Good idea. How many people are coming?
- Amina** : I'm not sure yet, but I wrote "RSVP"<sup>(9)</sup> on the invitations. That means everyone has to let me know<sup>(10)</sup> if they're coming.
- Hani** : Who's choosing the music?
- Amina** : Dalida is going to make a playlist<sup>(11)</sup> on her phone. She made one for my party and it was really great.
- Hani** : That's right. It was really good. We can ask her to make it after she finishes the cake.
- Amina** : And we need an adult<sup>(12)</sup> to set off<sup>(13)</sup> the fireworks<sup>(14)</sup> in the park<sup>(15)</sup> when it gets dark<sup>(16)</sup>.
- Youssef** : Yes, Nesma loves them. I know, I'll ask my dad to do it.

## الترجمة

- ١- أعلق اشريطه الزينة
- ٢- تمرر
- ٣- أربط
- ٤- خيط
- ٥- يمليء بعض البالونات
- ٦- بالهواء
- ٧- تزيين بورقة عيد الميلاد
- ٨- دعوات
- ٩- دعوات عبر البريد الإلكتروني
- ١٠- من فضلك، أرسل الرد
- ١١- يجب ان يخبروني
- ١٢- قائمة بشعيل
- ١٣- شخص بالغ / راشد
- ١٤- يطلق
- ١٥- ألعاب نارية
- ١٦- فناء
- ١٧- تظلم

## Did you know?

## هل كنت تعلم؟

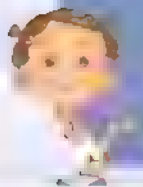
In China, people eat noodles on their birthday. The noodles are very long to represent a long life for the person.

يأكل الناس المكرونة الرفيعة في الصين في عيد ميلادهم. تكون المكرونة طويلة جداً لتمثل حياة طويلة للشخص.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك يستمع ويقرأ.





# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

لنستمع آخر الكتاب



1. Adel is ..... years old.

☐ a 10

☐ b 11

☐ c 12

☐ d 13

2. Adel invites his ..... to the party.

☐ a teachers

☐ b friends

☐ c cousins

☐ d doctors

3. Adel's ..... makes him a big cake.

☐ a sister

☐ b brother

☐ c mother

☐ d father

4. Adel has twelve ..... on the cake.

☐ a flowers

☐ b candles

☐ c pens

☐ d books

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm hanging up the ..... for my sister's party.

(2023)

☐ a streamers

☐ b invitations

☐ c cake

☐ d fireworks

2. I made a/an ..... of the best 20 songs today.

(2023)

☐ a cake

☐ b firework

☐ c playlist

☐ d invitation

3. My cousin is old enough to ..... off the fireworks.

(2023)

☐ a decorate

☐ b send

☐ c let

☐ d make

4. Are you ..... the invitations?

(2023)

☐ a sending

☐ b blowing

☐ c hanging

☐ d decorating

5. My sister is blowing up the .....

(2023)

☐ a streamers

☐ b cakes

☐ c balloons

☐ d invitations

6. The boy is decorating the birthday .....

(2023)

☐ a chair

☐ b cake

☐ c candle

☐ d bike

7. I always send ..... to my friends to come to my birthday party.

☐ a celebrations

☐ b decorations

☐ c invitations

☐ d organizations



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: (الموضوعة 2023)

sad - cake - blowing - happy - hanging

I'm Sara. Today is my birthday. We are very <sup>1</sup> ..... My brother is <sup>2</sup> ..... up the streamers. My sister is <sup>3</sup> ..... up some balloons. My mother is decorating the birthday <sup>4</sup> ..... My uncle is making a playlist.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: (الاسكندرية 2023)

Hello, I'm Ali. Yesterday was my mother's birthday. My family gave her an exciting birthday party because she always helps and supports us. Mum does her best to make our family happy. My brother Omar, hung up the streamers with the help of my cousin Salem. My dad blew up the balloons and helped mum decorate the cake. On the other hand, my sister Lara made a playlist on her phone. She chose my mother's favorite songs. My aunt let the fireworks when it got dark. It was an amazing birthday party which showed our love to mum.

#### A- Choose the correct answer:

- The general idea of the text is about .....  
☐ a mum's new job ☐ an exam night  
☐ a strange night ☐ mum's birthday party
- The underlined word "amazing" means .....  
☐ wonderful ☐ bad ☐ terrible ☐ sad
- Lara made a ..... on her phone.  
☐ balloon ☐ candle ☐ playlist ☐ fireworks

#### B- Answer the following questions:

- Why did the family give mum a birthday party?

.....

- Summarize the text in two sentences.

.....



Celebrate good times!

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. blow - Can - balloons - up - you - some?

(الشهيرة 2023)

2. forget - invite - me - to friends - your.

3. you - sending - me - invitations - the?

4. together - streamers - are - the - tying

(2023)

5. coming - many - people - are - are?

**6 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what can I do, cousin

2. he is sending the invitations

**7 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقره إشارية من (50) كلمة عن:

Your birthday

مجاب آخر الوحدة

invite friends - blow up balloons



# Lesson 2

## I'm studying hard for my exams



### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



#### Activities

#### أنشطة

cycling

ركوب الدراجات

do exercise

يؤدي تمارين رياضية

go running

يمارس رياضة الجري

organize a party

ينظم حفل

prepare for exams

يذاكر من أجل الامتحانات

documentary

فيلم / برنامج وثائقي

### Other words

### كلمات أخرى



hard

بجد

revision

مراجعة

slow reader

قارئ بطيء

history books

كتب التاريخ

indoors

في الداخل (داخل المبنى)

important

مهم

news

أخبار

free time

وقت الفراغ

music concert

حفل موسيقى

funny movie

فيلم مضحك

soon

قريبًا



### Phrases and Prepositions

### عبارات وحروف جر

at the moment

في الوقت الحالي

get outside

يخرج

a few times a week

مرات قليلة كل أسبوع

on the weekends

في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع

have fun

يستمتع بوقته

looking forward to

يتطلع إلى

long ages

يستغرق وقت طويل

Help your child learn vocabulary about studying for the exams:

ساعد طفلك يتعلم مفردات عن المذاكرة من أجل الامتحانات.



Celebrate good times!

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

worry يقلق  
cycle يركب دراجة  
relax يسترخي  
organize ينظم

worried  
cycled  
relaxed  
organized

spend يقضي (وقت)  
run يجري  
see يرى  
wear يرتدي  
read يقرأ  
show يوضح / يبين

spent  
ran  
saw  
wore  
read  
showed



### The present continuous tense

زمن المضارع المستمر

1

Form  
التكوين

I → am ('m)  
He / She / It / اسم مفرد → is ('s)  
We / They / You / اسم جمع → are ('re) } + v-ing.

Ex. She's studying for her exams this week.

ننفي زمن المضارع المستمر بوضع (not) بعد am - is - are.

I → am ('m not)  
He / She / It / اسم مفرد → is (isn't)  
We / They / You / اسم جمع → are (aren't) } +

2

Negative  
النفي

Ex. They aren't enjoying their vacation at the moment.

نسال عن زمن المضارع المستمر بالصيغة الآتية:

في حالة السؤال بـ (هل...؟):

Am → I  
Is → he / she / it / اسم مفرد  
Are → we / they / you / اسم جمع } + V-ing....?

3

Question  
السؤال

Ex. Are you playing football today?





⊙ وللإجابة المختصرة نقول:

- Yes, I **am**.

No, I'm **not**.

⊙ في حالة السؤال بكلمة استفهام:

**am, is, are + فاعل + V-ing....?** كلمة استفهام

**Ex. What are you doing, girls?**

- We're **helping** to make the birthday cake.

⊙ يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث بدأت في الماضي وما زالت مستمرة في الوقت الحاضر ومستمرة في المستقبل ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام

Usage

الاستخدام

**Ex. She's studying** for her exams this week.

**Ex. I'm reading** a book at the moment.

**Ex. I'm finishing** "Everything in Ancient Egypt" but it's **taking** ages because I'm a slow reader!

⊙ هنا المعنى انى اقرأ كتاب حالياً حيث بدأت قرأته منذ فترة ولم انتهى منه بعد

⊙ يستخدم للتعبير عن فعل يحدث ومستمر في لحظة الكلام.

**Ex. Sara is watching** TV now.

⊙ يستخدم لوصف اشياء تحدث في صورة.

**Ex. What are** Noha and Dalida **doing** there?

- They're **playing** with the balloons.

⊙ يعبر عن أحداث تم التخطيط لها مسبقاً لتحدث في المستقبل.

**Ex. Many friends are coming** to my birthday party tomorrow.

Look! this week

today

Listen! at the moment في هذه اللحظة / حالياً

now

Look out! at present في الوقت الحاضر

5

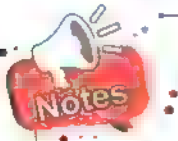
Keywords

الكلمات الدالة





## Celebrate good times!



١- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك نضعف الحرف الأخير عند إضافة (ing) (مع بعض الأفعال):

sit → sitting hit → hitting

٢- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف غير منطوق يحذف الـ ثم تضاف إلى الفعل:

use → using make → making

٣- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) منطوق لا تحذف عند إضافة (ing):

see → seeing be → being

٤- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (ie) تحول إلى (y) عند إضافة (ing):

lie → lying die → dying tie → tying



## Study the following

١ I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment.

- أذاكر بجد من أجل امتحاناتي في الوقت الحالي.

٢ I'm not spending all my time indoors.

- لا أقضي كل وقتي في الداخل (في المنزل).

٣ I know it is important to get outside and do some exercise.

- أعلم أنه من المهم الخروج وممارسة التمارين الرياضية.

٤ I'm going running every morning in the park.

- أنا اذهب للجري كل صباح في المتنزه.

٥ I'm also cycling on the weekends with my dad.

- أقوم أيضًا بركوب الدراجة في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع مع والدي.

٦ I'm trying to see my friends a few times a week

- أحاول رؤية أصدقائي مرات قليلة في الأسبوع.

٧ My friend Asser is organizing a party at his house.

- ينظم صديقي أسر حفلة في منزله.

٨ What are you reading?

- ماذا تقرأ؟

٩ What's the weather like in Alexandria?

- ما هي حالة الطقس في الاسكندرية؟



# Practice

1

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

- What are you \_\_\_\_\_ today, Hazem?  
☐ a do                      ☐ b did                      ☐ c doing                      ☐ d does
- Amr is \_\_\_\_\_ a book in the library.  
☐ a read                      ☐ b reading                      ☐ c reads                      ☐ d to read
- I \_\_\_\_\_ going to the party. I have a lot of homework.  
☐ a isn't                      ☐ b 'm not                      ☐ c aren't                      ☐ d don't
- My sister \_\_\_\_\_ wearing a red dress.  
☐ a am                      ☐ b is                      ☐ c are                      ☐ d do
- They aren't .. \_\_\_\_\_ football at the moment.  
☐ a play                      ☐ b played                      ☐ c plays                      ☐ d playing

2

اكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس

- My brother is \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the work now.
- We are \_\_\_\_\_ (have) our lunch now.
- What \_\_\_\_\_ (are) she doing at the moment?
- Are you playing chess? Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ (are).
- She is \_\_\_\_\_ (studies) for the exam this week.



the same city?

استمع واقرأ إيميل على لصديقه إياد. هل يعيش الأولاد في نفس المدينة؟

## New Message

To ali@qwikmail.com

From eyad@egyptmail.com

Subject What's your news?



Cc Bcc

Hi Eyad,

استمع إلى النص:



How are things?

I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. But don't worry<sup>(1)</sup>; I'm not spending all my time *hours*<sup>(2)</sup>! I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise, so I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm also *cycling*<sup>(3)</sup> on the weekends with my dad. I'm trying to see my friends a few times a week, too - it's good to *relax*<sup>(4)</sup> and have fun sometimes, and we try not to talk about how our *relation*<sup>(5)</sup> is going! My friend Asser is *organizing*<sup>(6)</sup> a party at his house for the end of the exams, so we are all *looking forward to that*<sup>(7)</sup>.

## Arabic Meaning

- ١- لا تقلق
- ٢- في الداخل
- ٣- اركب دراجة
- ٤- استرخي
- ٥- مراجعة
- ٦- ينظم
- ٧- نتطلع إلى ذلك
- ٨- قارئ بطن
- ٩- فيلم / برنامج وثائقي

What's the weather like in Alexandria? It's really hot here already! ☀️

In your last email, you asked me what I'm reading at the moment. I'm finishing "Everything in Ancient Egypt" but it's taking ages because I'm a *slow* *reader*<sup>(8)</sup>! I am enjoying it - I love history books - and the *documentary*<sup>(9)</sup> is good, too. (my mom said she will get me the DVD). What about you? What are you reading?



Write soon and tell me your news.

Ali



4

Complete the sentences with the present continuous form of the verb.

أكمل الجمل بصيغة زمن المضارع المستمر:

1. Malak \_\_\_\_\_ her project on Egyptian celebrations this week. (finish)
2. The students \_\_\_\_\_ hard for a music concert. (practice)
3. Where \_\_\_\_\_ your brother \_\_\_\_\_ in the USA? (study)
4. We \_\_\_\_\_ our lunch at the moment. (eat)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Basel and Amir \_\_\_\_\_ a funny movie? (watch)
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ in the basketball match today, I have too much school work.  
(not play)

5

Put the words in order. Write the sentences in your notebook.

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب. اكتب الجمل في كراستك:

1. playing? - Are - a - they - game  
Are they playing a game?
2. wearing - a - hat. - I'm - new  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. some - Ahmed - isn't - cake. - eating  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. sisters - My - cooking - food. - some - are  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. your - taking - dad - Is - photos?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. helping - Laila and Mona - your - are - mom.  
\_\_\_\_\_



# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. You look **very** tired, you need to ..... and have fun.

- ☐ a work                      ☐ b eat                      ☐ c relax                      ☐ d run

2. My brother is a slow ..... . He takes four months to finish reading a book.

- ☐ a reader                      ☐ b rider                      ☐ c moment                      ☐ d revision

3. A: My sister passed the exam! B: Great .....

- ☐ a foods                      ☐ b news                      ☐ c pens                      ☐ d books

4. My room is very messy. I want to ..... it.

- ☐ a eat                      ☐ b cycle                      ☐ c organize                      ☐ d write

5. I like history, so I always watch ..... films.

(2022)

- ☐ a cartoon                      ☐ b sports                      ☐ c funny                      ☐ d documentary

## 2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I had a wonderful time in Alexandria with my family. We went **there** by train. My family liked to travel to Alexandria. My best thing in Alexandria is swimming in the sea early in the morning. My family liked to swim in the sea. We met my father's friend Mr. Mustafa and his family. We played together on the beach. I built a huge sandcastle. The trip was amazing.

### A- Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "**there**" refers to .....

- ☐ a Alexandria                      ☐ b Cairo                      ☐ c London                      ☐ d Aswan

2. The family liked to swim in the .....

- ☐ a river                      ☐ b sea                      ☐ c lake                      ☐ d canal

3. The trip was .....

- ☐ a sad                      ☐ b boring                      ☐ c amazing                      ☐ d bad



**B- Answer the following questions:**

4. How did they travel to Alexandria?

5. What is their best thing in Alexandria?

**3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. reading - What - you - are?

(2023)

2. sisters - My - cooking - food - some - are.

3. wearing - a hat - new - new.

(2023)

4. the - was - the - weather - like - there?

(2023)

**4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She is studying for her exam ..... **(last)** week.

(2023)

2. Are you **(played)** football at the moment?

3. Look! The cat is ..... **(run)** after the mouse.

(2023)

4. They ..... **(is)** coming from school now.

(2023)

5. .... **(Does)** she helping her mother?

(2023)

6. I'm ..... **(read)** a story at the moment.

(2023)

7. Hatem ..... **(is studying)** now, he's sleeping.



Celebrate good times!

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what's the weather like
2. I m not spending all my free time in reading

## 6 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

cycling -> reading

To your friend Amir telling him about what activities you are doing these days.  
Your name is Tarek and your email address is tarek55@yahoo.com and your friend's email address is amir33@gmail.com.

### New Message



To .....

Cc Bcc

From .....

Subject .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Lesson 3

## Birthdays around the world Math Pronunciation

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|          |                             |             |             |
|----------|-----------------------------|-------------|-------------|
| blow out | يطفيء (الشمع)               | tradition   | تقليد       |
| breath   | النفس                       | guest       | ضيف         |
| burn     | يحترق                       | adult       | راشد / بالغ |
| noodles  | مكرونة رفيعة وطويلة (شعرية) | celebration | احتفال      |

### Other words

#### كلمات أخرى



|               |                |            |            |
|---------------|----------------|------------|------------|
| age           | عمر / سن       | peach      | خوخة       |
| snack         | وجبة خفيفة     | Chinese    | الصينيون   |
| piece         | قطعة           | usual      | معتاد      |
| birthday card | كارت عيد ميلاد | party food | طعام الحفل |
| especially    | خصوصاً         | present    | هدية       |
| (be) born     | يولد           | flame      | لهب        |
| everywhere    | في كل مكان     | basbousa   | بسبوسة     |

### Countries

|         |                            |
|---------|----------------------------|
| India   | الهند                      |
| Brazil  | البرازيل                   |
| Nigeria | نيجيريا                    |
| the USA | الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية |

|              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| Britain      | بريطانيا     |
| South Africa | جنوب إفريقيا |
| China        | الصين        |
| Holland      | هولندا       |





Celebrate good times!



## Phrases and Prepositions

## عبارات وحروف جر

|                    |                      |                      |             |
|--------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-------------|
| all over the world | في جميع أنحاء العالم | give a present       | يعطي هدية   |
| come out           | يخرج                 | fully grown          | كامل النضج  |
| get a present      | يحصل على هدية        | blow out the candles | يطفىء الشمع |

## Conjugation of verbs

### صيغ الافعال

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع   | Past ماضٍ  | Present مضارع      | Past ماضٍ |
|-----------------|------------|--------------------|-----------|
| celebrate يحتفل | celebrated | leave يترك / يغادر | left      |
| include يشمل    | included   | become يصبح        | became    |
| invite يدعو     | invited    | burn يحترق         | burnt     |
|                 |            | blow out يُطفىء    | blew out  |



## أفعال غير منتظمة

**blow out** يطفىء to send air through your mouth to stop a fire or flame

**adults** البالغون fully grown people, not children

**breath** النفس the air that comes out of mouth

**noodles** مكرونة رفيعة وطويلة (شعرية) a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs.

**guests** ضيوف people you invite to your home

## Study the following

- 1 Birthdays are celebrated all over the world.  
- يتم الاحتفال بأعياد الميلاد في جميع أنحاء العالم.
- 2 We usually make a birthday cake.  
- عادة ما نعد تورتة عيد الميلاد.
- 3 We put candles on the cake to show the children's age.  
- نضع الشموع على التورتة لنبين أعمار الأطفال.
- 4 The candles show the person's age.  
- تبين الشموع عمر الشخص.
- 5 The children usually get a present.  
- عادة ما يحصل الأطفال على هدية.
- 6 Children everywhere like party food.  
- يحب الأطفال في كل مكان طعام الحفل.
- 7 Children like to blow out the candles.  
- يحب الأطفال أن يطفئوا الشموع.
- 8 The birthday child gives cake to all the guests.  
- يعطى الطفل صاحب عيد الميلاد تورتة لكل الضيوف.
- 9 It's good to do this with one breath.  
- من الجيد أن تفعل ذلك في نفس واحد.
- 10 They become one on the day they are born.  
- يصبحوا عندهم سنة في اليوم الذي يولدون فيه.
- 11 My mom always makes basbousa.  
- دائماً ما تعد امي البسبوسة.

## TIP

- To match headings to paragraphs in a text, look for key words first. What is the topic of the key words in each paragraph? Then look at the headings. Are there any words that are the same or are about the same topics?

- لمطابقة العناوين بالفقرات في النص، ابحث عن الكلمات الرئيسية أولاً. ما هو موضوع الكلمات الرئيسية في كل فقرة؟ ثم انظر إلى العناوين. هل هناك كلمات متطابقة أو تتحدث عن نفس الموضوعات؟

1

like to eat the most? Discuss with a partner:

استمع واقرأ النص. أي طعام أعياد الميلاد أو الحفلات تحب أكثر؟ ناقش مع زميلك.

Tapescript



استمع إلى النص:

1- Our birthday celebrations<sup>(1)</sup>

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a **present**<sup>(2)</sup>, too



## 2- Birthdays are not just for children

What about in other countries? In the USA and Britain, it is usual to give good friends and family presents on their birthdays even when they are **adults**<sup>(3)</sup>. People often give other people birthday cards too, especially on important birthdays. In South Africa, 21 is an

important birthday because you become an adult at this age.

In Holland, children get bigger presents when they are 5, 10, 15 or 20. In Nigeria, the most important birthdays are when someone is one, 10 and 15.



## Arabic Mapping

- ١ - احتفال
- ٢ - هدية
- ٣ - بالغون
- ٤ - وجبة خفيفة
- ٥ - يطفئ
- ٦ - النفس
- ٧ - تحترق
- ٨ - ضيوف
- ٩ - مكروبة رفيعة

## 3- Candles and cakes

Children everywhere like party food. This often includes small cakes, sandwiches and **snacks**<sup>(4)</sup>. In many countries, children like to **blow out**<sup>(5)</sup> the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one **breath**<sup>(6)</sup>! But in India, the candles are left to **burn**<sup>(7)</sup>. Did you know that when it is a child's birthday in Brazil, they give the first piece of their birthday cake to the most important people in their family? That's

their mom and dad! In India too, the birthday child gives cake to all the **guests**<sup>(8)</sup> at their party first, before they have some themselves.



## 4- A longer life

Some countries have different birthday food. In China, people like to eat long **noodles** or peaches on their birthday. Why? Because they think that these can give you a long life. And Chinese people are often older. Why? Because they become one on the day they are born. So if you are 10, a Chinese child is 11!





# CLIL: MATH

## Estimating volume تقدير الحجم



### Key vocabulary

|                |              |              |                     |
|----------------|--------------|--------------|---------------------|
| amount         | مقدار / كمية | milkshake    | مخفوق الحليب        |
| exact          | دقيق / مضبوط | in total     | إجمالي / في المجممل |
| fridge         | ثلاجة        | full         | ممتلىء              |
| half a liter   | نصف لتر      | estimate (d) | يقدر                |
| milliliter     | مليلتر       | estimation   | تقدير               |
| measuring tube | أنبوب قياس   | guess        | يخمن                |

• عندما نقوم بعملية تقدير الكمية (حجم / طول / عرض....) فأثناء، نعطي أرقامًا ليس بالضرورة أن تساوي الكمية بشكل محدد. فمثلاً عند تقدير طول شخص بأنه حوالي متر ونصف (150سم) من الممكن أن يكون 140سم أو 160سم ومن الممكن اتباع خطوات تقريب العدد كما درسنا في الوحدة الثانية.

• حيث إذا كان الرقم المطلوب تقديره يساوي أو يزيد عن 5 / 50 / 500 فنقوم بزيادة الكمية المطلوب تقديرها: 260 مليلتر  $\approx$  300 مليلتر بالتقريب.

• أما إذا كان الرقم اقل من أو يساوي 4 / 49 / 499 لا نزيد الرقم ويبقى الرقم الصغير كما هو.

- فمثلاً لو سأل شخص عن كمية من السائل تبلغ 220 مليلتر ما هو اقرب تقدير لها فيمكن أن نقول 200 مليلتر.

### TIP

- When we talk about the amount of something, we don't always need to be exact. We can estimate, or guess, the amount. For example, if your mom asks you, "How much milk is there in the fridge?" You can say, "There's about half a liter" not, "There's 487 milliliters." We often use the word about when giving an estimation.

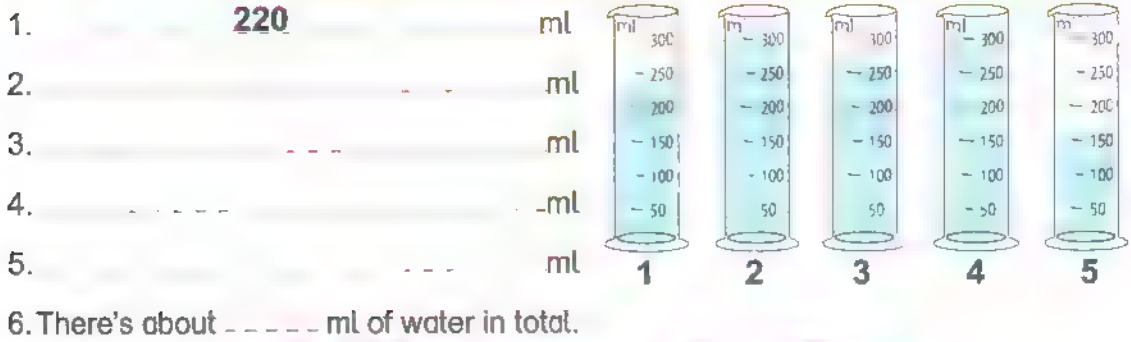
عندما نتحدث عن مقدار شيء ما ، فإننا لا نحتاج دائماً أن نذكر ذلك بدقة. يمكننا تقدير أو تخمين المقدار. على سبيل المثال، لو تسألك والدتك، «ما مقدار الحليب الموجود في ثلاجة؟»، يمكنك أن تقول، «هناك حوالي نصف لتر، وليس، هناك ٤٨٧ مليلتر». غالباً ما نستخدم كلمة «حوالي» عند إعطاء تقدير.



Celebrate good times!



انظر إلى الأنايب القياس. قم بتقدير كمية الماء في كل منها. كم إجمالاً كمية المياه؟



## Pronunciation

The sounds /ei/ & /e/

ندرس في هذا الدرس نطق الرمز الصوتي /ei/ وتمثله الحروف ai / ay / a-e.

وندرس أيضاً نطق الرمز الصوتي /e/ وتمثله الحروف e / ea / e في الكلمات الآتية:



انظر واستمع وردد:

|   |  |   |  |
|---|--|---|--|
| <p><b>sound /ei/</b></p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div> <p>cake تورتة</p> </div> <div> <p>train قطار</p> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 20px;"> <div> <p>say يقول</p> </div> </div> |  | <p><b>sound /e/</b></p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div> <p>bed سرير</p> </div> <div> <p>head رأس</p> </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 20px;"> <div> <p>shed كوخ لتخزين الأشياء / سقيفة</p> </div> </div> |  |
|---|--|---|--|

### Other words

The sound /ei/

bake  
page  
stay

يخبز  
بدفع (مالاً)  
يبقى / يقيم

The sound /e/

said  
bread  
get

يقول  
خبز  
يحصل على





wait  
man  
shade  
sail  
mate  
pain  
plate  
rainbow

ينتظر  
رئيسي  
ظل  
يبحر - شراع  
رفيق  
ألم  
طبق مسطح  
قوس قزح

ledge  
men  
sell  
met  
pen  
desk  
let

حافة  
رجال  
يبيع  
قابل  
قلم جاف  
مقعد  
يدع / يترك



### Study the following

- 1 I think the tools are in the shed. - اعتقد ان الأدوات موجودة في السقيفة.
- 2 I want to sail a boat! - اريد ان ابحر بقارب!
- 3 Gameela said that she's excited about her holiday. - قالت جميلة انها متحمسة لاجازتها.
- 4 Hani has a pain in his foot. - يعاني هاني من ألم في قدمه.



### Read the words and write them in the correct group:

اقرأ الكلمات واكتبهم في المجموعات الصحيحة:

bake - bread - get - ledge - pay - said - stay - wait

| English | Arabic |
|---------|--------|
| bake    |        |
| ...     | ...    |
| ...     | ...    |
| ...     | ...    |



### Listen and write the word that you hear:

استمع وضع دائرة على الكلمة التي تسمعا:

1. Is this the main / men paragraph in the text?
2. I think the tools are in the shed / shade.
3. I want to sail / sell a boat!
4. Gameela say / said that she's excited about her holiday.
5. Hani has a pain / pen in his foot.



# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن الآن نستمع إلى التسجيل



1. Hossam's friend's ..... was last week.

- ☐ a birthday      ☐ b cake      ☐ c birth place      ☐ d bird

2. Hossam's friend had a big .....

- ☐ a park      ☐ b party      ☐ c balloon      ☐ d book

3. Hossam's friend blew out the candles with one .....

- ☐ a breeze      ☐ b breath      ☐ c bread      ☐ d park

4. Hossam's friend ..... all his friends to the party.

- ☐ a played      ☐ b traveled      ☐ c invited      ☐ d wrote

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

المبوضعة اجرة لدا (2023)

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**football - cards - friends - candles - birthday**

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. In Egypt, We usually make cakes for our children and put ☐ on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and ☐. The children usually get presents too. People often give other people birthday ☐ too, especially on important birthdays.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... are people you invite to your home.

(2023)

- ☐ a Adults      ☐ b Guests      ☐ c Children      ☐ d Chinese

2. .... is the air that comes out of your mouth.

(2023)

- ☐ a View      ☐ b Sound      ☐ c Tradition      ☐ d Breath

3. There are enough chairs for all the ..... at the party.

(2023)

- ☐ a guests      ☐ b meals      ☐ c traditions      ☐ d presents

4. My brother is nine, so we put nine ..... on the top of his birthday cake.

شماره ستمده (2023)

- ☐ a balloons      ☐ b streamers      ☐ c candles      ☐ d invitations



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

5. We blow . . . . . candles on birthdays.

- a** over                      **b** out                      **c** into                      **d** about

6. In India, the candles are left to..... .

- a** bear                      **b** learn                      **c** burn                      **d** turn

7. Children usually get ..... on their birthdays.

- a** traditions                      **b** presents                      **c** trains                      **d** peaches

8. Children everywhere like party .....

- a** food                      **b** breath                      **c** coat                      **d** boat

#### 4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. all - Earth - over - the world - are - celebrated.

(2023)

2. Chinese - eat - like - noodles - to - to.

(2023)

3. has - foot - a pain - his - in - his.

4. mom - always - she - basbousa - makes.

#### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. in China, people eat noodles

2. How do you celebrate your birthday, ali

#### 6 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إسشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Birthday parties

Guiding questions

1- When is the birthday?

2- Do you like giving presents?

مجاوب آخر الوحدة



# Lessons 48.5

## Writing & Project

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|                 |            |              |               |
|-----------------|------------|--------------|---------------|
| formal language | لغة رسمية  | celebration  | احتفال        |
| polite          | مehذب      | Mother's Day | عيد الأم      |
| correct         | صحيح       | address      | عنوان         |
| spelling        | الهجاء     | drinks       | مشروبات       |
| costume         | ملابس / زي | Sincerely    | بصدق / بإخلاص |

celebration احتفال party

attend يحضر come to

confirm يؤكد say yes or no

### Other words

#### كلمات أخرى



|         |        |             |                      |
|---------|--------|-------------|----------------------|
| event   | حدث    | prize       | جائزة                |
| details | تفاصيل | sports hall | قاعة لممارسة الرياضة |
| below   | أسفل   | community   | مجتمع صغير           |
| local   | محلي   | grammar     | قواعد لغوية          |



### Phrases and Prepositions

#### عبارات وحروف جر

|              |              |             |                 |
|--------------|--------------|-------------|-----------------|
| addressed to | مرسل إلى     | bye for now | إلى اللقاء الآن |
| as well as   | بالإضافة إلى | in writing  | كتائياً         |



## Conjugation of verbs

مراجعة

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع     | Past ماضٍ   | Present مضارع  | Past ماضٍ |
|-------------------|-------------|----------------|-----------|
| receive يستلم     | received    | speak يتحدث    | spoke     |
| attend يحضر       | attended    | write يكتب     | wrote     |
| reply يرد         | replied     | know يعرف      | knew      |
| confirm يؤكد      | confirmed   | let يترك / يدع | let       |
| dress up يتهندم   | dressed up  |                |           |
| figure out يستنتج | figured out |                |           |

## Study the following

- I am writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day celebration this year.  
- أكتب إليكم لأدعوكم إلى احتفال المدرسة بعيد الأم هذا العام.
- We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21.  
- ننظم يوماً خاصاً للحدث يوم الأحد ٢١ مارس.
- We are inviting people from the local community who often help our school.  
- ندعو الناس من المجتمع المحلي الذين غالباً ما يساعدوا مدرستنا.
- We very much hope you can attend.  
- نأمل بشدة أن تتمكن من الحضور.
- RSVP in writing to the email address above.  
- من فضلك رد سريعاً وكتابياً على عنوان البريد الإلكتروني أعلاه.
- Please reply by February 20 to confirm if you can attend the celebration.  
- يرجى الرد قبل ٢٠ فبراير لتأكيد ما إذا كان بإمكانك حضور الاحتفال.
- Dress up as your favorite character from your favorite book.  
- ارتدي ملابس شخصيتك المفضلة من كتابك المفضل.
- Figure out which character your friends are from the clothes they are wearing.  
- اكتشف شخصية أصدقائك من الملابس التي يرتدونها.
- We have an amazing prize for the best costume.  
- لدينا جائزة رائعة لأفضل زي.
- Come and try our drinks and delicious snacks!  
- تعال وجرب مشروباتنا ووجباتنا الخفيفة اللذيذة!
- Who is the invitation addressed to?  
- لمن توجه هذه الدعوة؟



## Celebrate good times!



- We use formal language when we speak or write to people we don't know very well. We use polite language and correct spelling and grammar in formal writing.

نستخدم اللغة الرسمية عندما نتحدث أو نكتب لأشخاص لا نعرفهم جيداً. نستخدم لغة مهذبة وهجاء صحيح وقواعد سليمة في الكتابات الرسمية.

Tape script



استمع إلى النص:



### New Message

From celebrationgroup@newschool.com

Cc Bcc

To Mr Ahmed Hegazy

Subject Mother's Day Celebration

Dear Mr Ahmed,

I am writing to invite you to our school's **Mother's Day celebration**<sup>(1)</sup> this year. We are organizing a **special day**<sup>(2)</sup> for the event on **Sunday March 21** (**details below**<sup>(3)</sup>). As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the **local community**<sup>(4)</sup> who often help our school. We very much hope you can **attend**<sup>(5)</sup>.

Date : Sunday March 21

Time : 4:00 pm – 7:00 pm

Location : School Hall

RSVP in writing to the email address

above

Please **reply**<sup>(6)</sup> by February 20 to **confirm**<sup>(7)</sup> if you can attend the celebration.

Yours sincerely,

Randa Gamal

### Arabic-Meaning

- ١- احتفال عيد الأم
- ٢- يوم خاص
- ٣- التفاصيل أسفل
- ٤- المجتمع المحلي
- ٥- يحضر
- ٦- ارسل الرد
- ٧- يؤكد





انظر إلى الكلمات بالأسود العريض وصلهم بالتعبيرات غير الرسمية :

- |                |   |                  |
|----------------|---|------------------|
| 1. Sincerely,  | ⊙ | a. say yes or no |
| 2. celebration | ⊙ | b. party         |
| 3. attend      | ⊙ | c. come to       |
| 4. confirm     | ⊙ | d. Hi!           |
| 5. Dear        | ⊙ | e. Bye for now   |

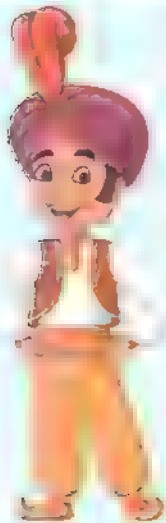
2

Read and do

اقرأ وافعل :

خطوات عمل ملصق للاحتفال : A poster for a celebration

1. Read your poster. Look carefully at the title, text, and pictures.
2. Give your celebration a name and write a title.
3. Write a description of the event and the things people can do.
4. Add a photo/some photos.
5. Include information about the place, date, and time.
6. Check your writing: are the spelling, grammar, and punctuation correct?



## Book Day Party!

Let's celebrate reading!

Draw up<sup>(1)</sup> as your favorite character<sup>(2)</sup> from your favorite book.

Figure out<sup>(3)</sup> which character your friends are from the clothes they are wearing.

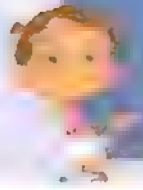
We have an amazing prize for the best costume<sup>(4)</sup>.

Come and try our drinks and delicious snacks<sup>(5)</sup>.

Wednesday, 21.09.2016 in the school hall<sup>(6)</sup> Family members<sup>(7)</sup> are all welcome!

### Available Vocabulary

- 1- ارتدى ملابس
- 2- شخصيتك المفضلة
- 3- اكتشف / استنتج
- 4- زي
- 5- وجبات خفيفة لذيذة
- 6- قاعة
- 7- أفراد



# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We are wearing ..... in the party.

(2023) التأسيسية

- ☐ a costume      ☐ b celebration      ☐ c fireworks      ☐ d invitation

2. Please, call me to ..... if you want to come to the party.

- ☐ a forget      ☐ b confirm      ☐ c sleep      ☐ d sail

3. We have an amazing ..... for the best costume.

- ☐ a prize      ☐ b spelling      ☐ c hall      ☐ d address

4. Tomorrow is our school's Mother's Day .....

- ☐ a estimation      ☐ b celebration      ☐ c information      ☐ d location

5. I hope all the guests can..... the party.

- ☐ a miss      ☐ b attend      ☐ c invite      ☐ d play

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

القيوم - إدارة طوماس (2023)

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**presents - address - special - celebration - local**

Yesterday was my mother's birthday. It was a great ❶ . I invited my friends. We organized a ❷ day for the event. We also invited people from the ❸ community. They helped us in the party. My mother got a lot of ❹ .

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. a - prize - the best - We - costume - have - for.

(2023)

2. addressed - is - invitation - the - Who - to?

3. are - the - inviting - local community - We - from - people

4. attend - We - very much - hope - you - can

#### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. we have an amazing prize

2. what does randa do

#### 5 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

To your friend Hana inviting her to your birthday party. Your name is Hala and your email address is hala@gmail.com and your friend's email address is hana@yahoo.com.

New Message

To

From

Subject

Cc

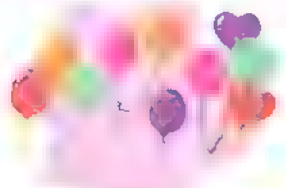
Bcc



# Review



## Birthday celebration احتفال عيد ميلاد



balloons  
بالونات



streamers  
أشرطة الزينة



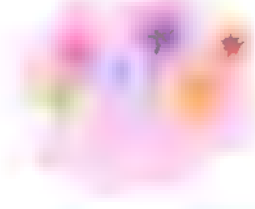
birthday cake  
تورتة عيد ميلاد



invitation  
دعوة



playlist قائمة تشغيل (أغاني)



fireworks  
ألعاب نارية

cycling

ركوب الدراجات

do exercise

يؤدي تمارين رياضية

go running

يمارس رياضة الجري

celebration

احتفال

traditions

تقاليد

organize a party

ينظم حفل

study for exams

يذاكر من أجل الامتحانات

blow out

يطفىء (الشمع)

breath

النفس

burn (burnt)

يحرق

formal language

لغة رسمية

polite

مهذب

correct

صحيح

spelling

الهجاء

costume

ملابس / زي

estimate (d)

يقدر

guess (ed)

يخمن

present

هدية

guest

ضيف

adult

راشد / بالغ

Mother's Day

عيد الأم

reply

رد

drinks

مشروبات

# Conjugation of verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

|           |        |            |
|-----------|--------|------------|
| decorate  | يزين   | decorated  |
| organize  | يظم    | organized  |
| celebrate | يحتفل  | celebrated |
| invite    | يدعو   | invited    |
| attend    | يحضر   | attended   |
| confirm   | يؤكد   | confirmed  |
| dress up  | يتهندم | dressed up |

|         |              |         |
|---------|--------------|---------|
| hang up | يعلق         | hung up |
| blow up | يملئ بالهواء | blew up |
| sing    | يغنى         | sang    |
| know    | يعرف         | knew    |
| let     | يترك / يدع   | let     |
| leave   | يترك / يغادر | left    |

## المضارع المستمر

## المضارع المستمر

### The present continuous tense المستمر

فاعل

إثبات

نفي

استفهام

|                   |         |         |                  |
|-------------------|---------|---------|------------------|
| I                 | am      | am      | Am               |
| He / She / It /   | is      | is      | Is               |
| اسم مفرد          | + v-ing | + v-ing | + (كلمة استفهام) |
| We / You / They / | are     | are     | Are              |
| اسم جمع           |         |         | + فاعل + v-ing?  |

### Keywords

Look! - Listen! - now - at the moment - at present

١- يستخدم لوصف صورة. ٢- يعبر عن فعل يحدث الآن.

- Ex. 1. Sama and Shrouk are taking lunch now.  
 2. Rahma is not taking photos at the moment.  
 3. What are Youssef and Omar doing?  
 4. Is Osman reading a book now? - Yes, he is. / No, he isn't.





## Answers to Texts

### Lesson 1

#### My birthday

- 1 Yesterday was my birthday. I'm twelve years old. I had a party and I invited my friends, Ziad and Shady. They came to my house early to help me. They brought nice presents for me. They blew up balloons. We had a lot of fun. I like my friends.

### Lesson 2

#### Activities I'm doing these days

2

#### New Message

To amir33@gmail.com.

Cc Bcc

From tarek55@yahoo.com

Subject Activities I'm doing these days

Dear Amir,

How are you and your family? It's holiday. I have free time. So I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm also cycling on the weekends. I sometimes go to the cinema with my family. It's good to relax and have fun.

Write soon and tell me your news.

Yours,

Tarek

### Lesson 3

#### Birthday parties

3

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. We usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The guests come and bring presents with them. We decorate cakes and play the playlists to sing and dance together.



## Invitation to my birthday party

4

## New Message

To hana@yahoo.com

Cc Bcc

From hala@gmail.com

Subject Invitation to my birthday party

Dear Hana,

I'm so happy to write to you. How are you? My birthday is next Friday. I'm having a big party. I'd like to invite you to come. All our friends will be there. We will do many things. We will decorate the cake and blow up the balloons. Waiting for your reply.

Yours,

Hala

## Al-Azhar Test

## My free time

5

I don't have much free time. I spend it in a useful way. I like reading history books. I also like doing exercise. I sometimes draw and color nice pictures.

## Activity Unit 4

## Getting ready for the exams

6

I'm taking my exams next week. I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. I always have regular breaks to feel relax. I don't worry. I just study hard. I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise. It's good to have fun sometimes. I talk to my friends. We talk about our revision.

# Al-Azhar Test

الاختبار الخاص بالأزهر الشريف

## 1 Read and complete the dialog:






أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

invited - birthday - up - doing - invitations

- A : What are you ① ----- ?
- B : I'm blowing ② ----- some balloons.
- A : Why?
- B : Because my ③ ----- is today.
- A : Have you ④ ----- all of your friends?
- B : Yes, I have sent the ⑤ -----

## 2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

أقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

|   |         |         |          |         |       |
|---|---------|---------|----------|---------|-------|
|   | balloon | present | birthday | forget  |       |
|  | cake    | bread   | cookies  | wait    | ----- |
|  | pen     | pencil  | pain     | paper   | ---   |
|  | train   | car     | bake     | taxi    |       |
|  | noodles | peaches | apples   | candles |       |

## 3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

I'm Ola. On my last birthday, mom made a wonderful birthday cake. It was very delicious. All my friends liked it. It had a lot of chocolate and fruit. My friends said it was the best in the celebration. I asked my mom to make me another one.

### A. Answer the following questions:

1. Who made a wonderful cake?

-----

2. What's the celebration about?

3. Who attended the celebrations?

**B. Choose the correct answer:**

1. Everyone ..... the cake. (liked - disliked - threw)

2. Ola asked her mother to ..... another cake. (eat - make - buy)

**4 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm ..... up the streamers.

- ☐ a hanging ☐ b blowing ☐ c cutting ☐ d feeding

2. We have a party today. We invited many .....

- ☐ a guests ☐ b presents ☐ c candles ☐ d snacks

3. The birthday boy blew out the candles with one .....

- ☐ a path ☐ b breath ☐ c break ☐ d park

4. My friend is ..... a party at his house at the moment.

- ☐ a organize ☐ b organizing ☐ c organizes ☐ d organized

5. My brother likes history, so he always watches ..... films.

- ☐ a cartoon ☐ b funny ☐ c documentary ☐ d sports

6. I need an adult to let off the ..... for my birthday party.

- ☐ a balloons ☐ b cans ☐ c fireworks ☐ d streamers

7. He plays football with his friends in the school .....

- ☐ a class ☐ b lab ☐ c yard ☐ d room

8. I'm ..... forward to the party to see my cousin.

- ☐ a seeing ☐ b looking ☐ c making ☐ d eating

9. "A ....." is the air that comes out of your mouth.

- ☐ a Breath ☐ b Tradition ☐ c Sound ☐ d Present

10. My friends are wearing ..... for the party.

- ☐ a streamers ☐ b costumes ☐ c rooms ☐ d halls



## 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. I'm - studying - my - hard - exams - for.

2. birthday - got - present - I - a.

3. the - you - Are - invitations - sending?

4. gets - piece of - first - Wasn't - the - the cake?

5. often - Remember - cards - give - birthday.

## 6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

useful - history - exercise - draw - color

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

# Test

on Unit 4



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن الآن نستمع إلى صوت من الكتاب



1. In China, people eat ..... on their birthday.

- ☐ a apples      ☐ b noodles      ☐ c pasta      ☐ d rice

2. The noodles are very .....

- ☐ a short      ☐ b long      ☐ c tall      ☐ d big

3. The noodles represent a ..... life for the person.

- ☐ a small      ☐ b long      ☐ c sad      ☐ d dirty

4. The noodles are a ..... there.

- ☐ a tradition      ☐ b book      ☐ c pen      ☐ d cake

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: احذر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'm ..... up the balloons.

- ☐ a sending      ☐ b tying      ☐ c decorating      ☐ d blowing

2. We ..... my birthday in the club yesterday.

- ☐ a celebrated      ☐ b invited      ☐ c produced      ☐ d included

3. I'm ..... a big party tomorrow.

- ☐ a making      ☐ b taking      ☐ c having      ☐ d doing

4. We will ..... the cake, will you help us?

- ☐ a decorate      ☐ b hang      ☐ c let off      ☐ d tie

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: المنوشية - اذرة السداب (2023)

cake - blowing - making - happy - hanging

I'm Sara. Today is my birthday. We are very ..... My brother is .....  
up the streamers. My sister is ..... up some balloons. My mother is decorating  
the birthday cake. My uncle is ..... a playlist.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.





Celebrate good times!

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Today, we are having a nice party. It's for my sister's birthday. We are all happy and busy, too. I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister's party. My brother is blowing up some balloons. They're bright and colorful. My mom made a nice cake for my sister. Dalia and Noha are decorating the birthday cake. We have 10 candles for the cake to show my sister's age. My father sent the invitations to our friends. We are all very **excited**!

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

- I'm hanging up the .....  
☐ balloons    ☐ invitations    ☒ streamers    ☐ cakes
- The underlined word "**excited**" means very .....  
☐ a bored    ☐ b sad    ☐ c angry    ☐ d happy
- My sister is ..... years old.  
☐ a nine    ☐ b ten    ☐ c seven    ☐ d fifteen

**B- Answer the following questions:**

- What is my brother doing?  
 .....
- Who sent the invitations?  
 .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- birthday - decorating - the - They're - cake.  
 .....
- you - up - \_\_\_\_\_ - balloons - some - blow?  
 .....
- attended - \_ - last - a - big - week - party.  
 .....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- I'm ..... (**read**) a story at the moment.
- ..... (**Is**) you watching the match now?





**7 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

what're you doing this week

**8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إرشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Getting ready for the exams

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

study • hard • make • revision

# Myself and others

## Amazing journeys

### رحلات مذهشة



#### Objectives of the Unit

#### أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about famous travelers in the past.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويكتب ويبحث عن مشاهير الرحالة في الماضي.

2. Talk about things that happened in the past using common irregular verbs.

- يتحدث الطالب عن الأشياء التي حدثت في الماضي باستخدام الأفعال الشاذة الشائعة.

3. Understand the difference between the sounds **dz** and **z**.

- يفهم الطالب الفرق بين الأصوات **/dz/** و **/z/**.

4. Listen to understand specific details in a text.

- يستمع الطالب ليفهم تفاصيل محددة في النص.

5. Write a diary entry to express feelings and mood.

- يكتب الطالب يوميات للتعبير عن المشاعر والمزاج.

6. Research and make a poster about a famous traveler.

- يبحث الطالب ويقوم بعمل ملصق عن رحالة مشهور.

# Lesson

## He went by ship



### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



يركب الجمل



يسافر بالقطار



يسبح بالسفينة



يذهب في رحلة طويلة

traveling  
expressions  
تعابير السفر



يقوم برحلة قصيرة



go on a voyage  
يذهب في رحلة بحرية

diary  
trip

مفكرة يومية / مذكرة  
رحلة قصيرة

voyage  
travels

رحلة بحرية  
رحلات

### Famous explorers

### مستكشفون مشهورون

Ibn Battuta (1304–1368)

ابن بطوطة

Vasco da Gama

فاسكو دا جاما

Marco Polo (1254–1324)

ماركو بولو

(1460–1524)

Help your child learn about traveling expressions.

ساعد طفلك يتعلم عن تعبيرات السفر.

## Famous places

## أماكن مشهورة

China  
Croatia  
Hormuz

الصين  
كرواتيا  
مدينة هرمز

Iran  
Korcula  
Venice

إيران  
جزيرة كورتشولا (في كرواتيا)  
مدينة فينيسيا الإيطالية

## Other words

## كلمات أخرى



adventure

مغامرة

far away

بعيد

century

قرن (١٠٠ عام)

Italian

إيطالي (الجنسية)

different

مختلف

museum

متحف

difficult

صعب

travel diary

مذكرات السفر

experiences

تجارب حياتية

vacation

إجازة

explorer

مستكشف

poem

قصيدة شعرية

## Conjugation of verbs

## تحويل الأفعال

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

## أفعال غير منتظمة

## Present مضارع

## Past ماضٍ

## Present مضارع

## Past ماضٍ

imagine

يتخيل

imagined

fly

يطير

flew

sail

يبحر

sailed

ride

يركب

rode

stop

يتوقف

stopped

read

يقرأ

read

travel

يسافر

traveled

think

يعتقد

thought

## Study the following

- 1 What was your favorite thing about the vacation? ماذا كان أفضل شيء في الإجازة؟
- 2 The museum is on an island called Korcula. يقع المتحف في جزيرة تسمى كورتشولا.
- 3 The museum is all about the travels of Marco Polo. المتحف مخصص فقط لرحلات ماركو بولو.
- 4 Marco Polo was an Italian explorer. كان ماركو بولو مستكشفًا إيطاليًا.
- 5 He is one of the first people from the West to visit China. إنه من أوائل الناس الذين زاروا الصين من الغرب.
- 6 Marco Polo went to China in the 13th century. ذهب ماركو بولو إلى الصين في القرن الثالث عشر.



- 7 Marco Polo wrote a diary about his experiences. كتب ماركو بولو يوميات عن تجاربه.
- 8 How did people get to China in those days? كيف وصل الناس إلى الصين في تلك الأيام؟
- 9 Marco Polo went on a long voyage by sea. ذهب ماركو بولو في رحلة بحرية طويلة.
- 10 The museum had a lot of things from ancient China. كان المتحف يحتوي على الكثير من الأشياء من الصين القديمة.
- 11 I went to Dahab with my grandparents. We went for a week. ذهبت إلى دهب مع أجدادي. ذهبنا لمدة أسبوع.
- 12 I went to Hurgnada with my family. We went by bus. ذهبت إلى الغردقة مع عائلتي. ذهبنا بالأتوبيس.

### Language Functions

### الوظائف اللغوية

- He goes on a long **journey** to India. رحلة طويلة (journey)
- They went on a day **trip** to the beach. رحلة قصيرة (trip)
- The ship made a **voyage** across the Red Sea. رحلة بحرية (voyage)

### do you know these famous explorers from the past?

هل تعرف هؤلاء المستكشفين المشهورين من الماضي؟ أين ذهبوا؟ لماذا كلهم مشهورين؟ ناقش.

1



Ibn Battuta  
1304–1368

2



Vasco da Gama  
1460–1524

3



Marco Polo  
1254–1324





What was your favorite thing during the trip?

استمع واقرأ. أين ذهبت إنجي في الإجازة؟ ما كان أفضل شيء بالنسبة لها أثناء الرحلة؟

Transcript



استمع إلى النص:



- : What are you reading, Inji?
- Inji** : Oh hi, Rana. It's my travel diary. I want to remember<sup>(1)</sup> my family's vacation<sup>(2)</sup> in Croatia<sup>(3)</sup> a few years ago.
- : That's a good idea. What was your favorite thing about the vacation?
- Inji** : I think it was visiting the Marco Polo Museum.
- : Really? Where is that?
- Inji** : It's on an island in Croatia called K<sup>u</sup>cu<sup>a</sup><sup>(4)</sup>. We took a trip there. It's a really interesting museum-all about the travels of Marco Polo.
- : Who was Marco Polo?
- Inji** : He was an Italian explorer<sup>(5)</sup> and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13<sup>th</sup> century<sup>(6)</sup> and wrote a diary<sup>(7)</sup> about his experiences<sup>(8)</sup>. It's called *The Travels of Marco Polo*.
- : How did people get to China in those days? It's very far away. You couldn't just fly there, or travel by train!
- Inji** : It was very difficult<sup>(9)</sup> – the journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long voyage<sup>(10)</sup> by sea. He sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula, and then on to Iran. When he got to Hormuz, he stopped and went across the desert. He rode a camel all the way to China!
- : Wow, what an adventure<sup>(11)</sup>!
- Inji** : Yes, and imagine arriving in China almost 800 years ago! It was so different then. The museum had a lot of things from ancient China. It really made the story of Marco Polo come to life.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- يتذكر
- ٢- إجازة
- ٣- كرواتيا
- ٤- جزيرة كورتشولا
- ٥- مستكشف
- ٦- القرن الثالث عشر
- ٧- مذكرة
- ٨- تجارب حياتية
- ٩- صعب
- ١٠- رحلة بحرية
- ١١- معامرة

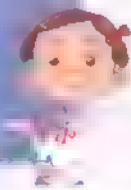


هل كنت تعلم؟

The longest journey on foot was George Meegan's walk from Tierra Del Fuego in Argentina to Alaska. It was 30,608 km long and he completed it in 2,425 days between 1977 and 1983.

تعد أطول رحلة سيراً على الأقدام كانت رحلة جورج ميغان من تيبيرا دبل فويجو في الأرجنتين إلى ألاسكا. كان طول الطريق 30,608 كم وأكمل رحلته في 2425 يوماً بين عامي 1977 و1983.

# Activities



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Salem ..... a trip every year. (2023) مسافرة
  - a takes      b rides      c sails      d writes
2. Marco Polo is a famous Italian .. (2023) مكتشف
  - a doctor      b painter      c singer      d explorer
3. Tourists like to ..... camels across the desert. (2023)
  - a drive      b cycle      c ride      d fly
4. A: ..... was Marco Polo? B: He was an Italian explorer. (2023)
  - a When      b Who      c How      d Where
5. Lina went on a long voyage by the ..... (2023) البحر
  - a sea      b hotel      c desert      d zoo

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

years - diary - China - century - Travels

Marco Polo was an Italian explorer. He was one of the first people from the west to visit ..... . He went there in the 13<sup>th</sup> ..... and wrote a ..... about his experience. It's called the ..... of Marco Polo.

## 3 Read the following text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص التالي واجب عن الأسئلة: (2023) أسئلة

Ibn Battuta is one of the greatest explorers in history. He lived during the 14th century. He was born in 1304. Ibn Battuta wanted to explore cultures. He started his journey at the age of 21, and it lasted for 29 years. He visited many places like Egypt, India, China, and many more. He didn't travel by plane like we do today. He used camels, boats, and walked long distances. Ibn Battuta wrote about his journey. His writings helped us understand and respect the differences between different places in the world. We also learned to be brave and curious to reach our dreams,

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ibn Battuta started his journey when he was .....
  - a 21      b 29      c 75      d 14

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.





## Amazing journeys

2. In his journey, Ibn Battuta used .....

☐ cars

☐ trains

☐ planes

☐ camels

3. The underlined word "it" refers to .....

☐ Ibn Battuta

☐ the journey

☐ the camel

☐ Egypt

### B- Answer the following questions:

4. Why did Ibn Battuta want to explore the world?

5. What do we learn from Ibn Battuta's journeys?

### 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. an - explorer - Italian - Marco Polo - was.

(2023)

2. wrote - his - \_\_\_\_\_ - about - a diary - experiences.

(2023)

3. your - trip - \_\_\_\_\_ - Omar - was?

(2023)

4. my - went - with - \_\_\_\_\_ - grandparents - to Dahab.

5. get to - \_\_\_\_\_ - China - did - in those days - people?

6. your - about - \_\_\_\_\_ - favorite thing - the vacation - was?

### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

the museum had a lot of things

# Lesson 2

## Part 1

# A surprising discovery

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



advanced  
clay  
mystery  
archaeologist

متقدم  
صلصال  
لغز  
عالم آثار

inspiration  
tools  
sculpture  
complicated

إلهام  
أدوات  
تمثال منحوت  
متشابهك / معقد

## Other words

### أخرى



works of art  
civilization  
humans  
BCE  
CE  
Ife people  
farming tools  
incredible  
information

أعمال فنية  
حضارة  
البشر  
قبل الميلاد  
بعد الميلاد  
شعب الأيبي (في نيجيريا قديمًا)  
أدوات زراعية  
لا يصدق / مدهش  
معلومات

quality  
sitting position  
large eyes  
unusual objects  
village of Nok  
ability  
written  
iron  
hair style

جودة  
وضعية الجلوس  
عيون كبيرة  
أشياء غير مألوفة  
قرية نوك في نيجيريا  
قدرة  
مكتوب  
حديد  
قصة شعر

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

agree يوافق  
call after يسمي باسم

agreed  
called after

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

find يجد  
write يكتب

found  
wrote



|               |           |   |
|---------------|-----------|---|
| clay          | صلصال     | a type of earth that is sticky when wet                               |
| inspiration   | إلهام     | an example others use to help create new ideas                        |
| tools         | أدوات     | objects we use to make or do things                                   |
| sculptures    | منحوتات   | art made from stone or wood   |
| advanced      | متقدم     | modern or well developed  |
| archaeologist | عالم آثار | a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground |
| mystery       | لغز       | something that people do not understand or cannot explain             |

## Study the following

- 1 Almost 100 years ago, local people found some unusual objects under the ground.  
منذ ما يقرب من ١٠٠ عام وجد السكان المحليون بعض الأشياء الغير مألوفة تحت الأرض.
- 2 These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans.  
كانت هذه الأشياء عبارة عن تماثيل جميلة من الصلصال لبشر.
- 3 The sculptures were all in the same style.  
كانت جميع المنحوتات منحوتة بنفس الطريقة.
- 4 The sculptures had large eyes and complicated hair styles.  
كانت عيون المنحوتات كبيرة وكان لها قصات شعر متشابكة.
- 5 They were in a sitting position with their hands on their legs.  
كانت المنحوتات في وضع الجلوس وأيديهم على أرجلهم.
- 6 The quality of the work was incredible.  
كانت جودة العمل مذهلة.
- 7 Archaeologists went to the area to find out more.  
ذهب علماء الآثار إلى المنطقة لمعرفة المزيد.
- 8 There were iron and stone farming tools.  
كانت هناك أدوات زراعية من الحديد والحجارة.
- 9 The Ife were famous for making beautiful metal sculptures of human heads.  
اشتهر شعب الأيفي بصنع تماثيل معدنية جميلة لرؤوس بشرية.
- 10 There is no written information about the Nok people.  
لا توجد معلومات مكتوبة عن شعب نوك.
- 11 We can learn about the Nok people from their art.  
يمكننا التعرف على شعب نوك من أعمالهم الفنية.
- 12 Their culture is still a mystery today.  
لا تزال ثقافتهم لغزا حتى اليوم.

# 1. Listen and read. Match the words with their meanings.

استمع واقرأ. أی الثقافتین تم ذکرهم؟

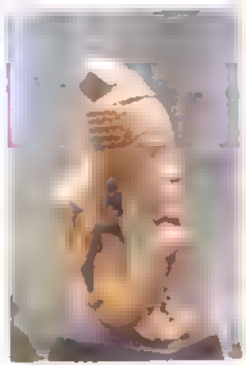
## Tapescript



استمع إلى النص.



Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok<sup>(1)</sup> in Nigeria, a country in West Africa<sup>(2)</sup>, found some unusual objects<sup>(3)</sup> under the ground. These objects<sup>(4)</sup> were beautiful clay sculptures<sup>(5)</sup> of humans<sup>(6)</sup>. The sculptures were all in the same style: they had large eyes<sup>(7)</sup> and complicated hair<sup>(8)</sup> styles. They were usually in a sitting position<sup>(9)</sup> with their hands on their legs. The quality<sup>(10)</sup> of the work was incredible<sup>(11)</sup>.

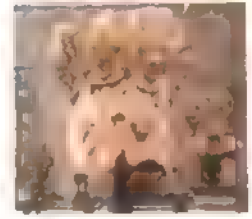


A team of archaeologists<sup>(12)</sup> went to the area to find out more. They found many similar sculptures in an area of hundreds of kilometers around Nok. There were also iron and stone farming tools<sup>(13)</sup>. The archaeologists agreed these were most likely from a very advanced culture from around 500 BCE. to 200 CE. It was a civilization which had the ability to work iron and stone to make tools, and which made beautiful art.

They called this culture the "Nok" civilization<sup>(14)</sup>, after the village where sculptures were found. Some believe that the sculptures were the inspiration<sup>(15)</sup> for the famous works of art by the later Yoruba people<sup>(16)</sup>, who were in Nigeria from the 11th to the 15th century CE. The Ife were famous for making beautiful metal sculptures of human heads. However, there is no written information<sup>(17)</sup> about the Nok people, so we can only learn about them from their art<sup>(18)</sup>. Their culture is still a mystery<sup>(19)</sup> today.

### Match the words with their meanings.

١. قرية نوك
٢. غرب إفريقيا
٣. أشياء غير مألوفة
٤. أشياء
٥. منحوتات من الصلصال
٦. بشر
٧. عيون كبيرة
٨. شعر مشابك
٩. وضع الحلوس
١٠. جودة
١١. لا يصدق / مذهش
١٢. علماء الآثار
١٣. أدوات زراعية
١٤. حضارة
١٥. إلهام
١٦. شعب الأيبي
١٧. معلومات
١٨. عمل فني
١٩. لغز



# Lesson 2

## Part 2

## ★ A surprising discovery

### Language focus

### الماضي البسيط (The simple past)

1

Usage  
الاستخدام

يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف تمت وانتهت في الماضي.

- My uncle **visited** us.

2

Form  
التكوين

بأبي الجملة + (فعل في التصريف الثاني) **verb** + (فاعل) **subject**

- My friend **bought** a new phone.

① تنقسم الأفعال في التصريف الثاني إلى أفعال منتظمة وغير منتظمة.

أولاً، الأفعال المنتظمة وهي التي تنتهي بـ **d, ed, ied**،

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف **e** نضيف إليه **d** فقط،

- like → **liked**

dance → **danced**

- إذا لم ينتهي الفعل بحرف **e** نضيف إليه **ed**،

- cook → **cooked**

play → **played**

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف **y** يسبقه حرف ساكن نقوم بحذف حرف الـ **y** ونضيف **ied**،

- study → **studied**

carry → **carried**

ثانياً، الأفعال الغير منتظمة وهذه الأفعال لا يضاف إليها **ed** وتحفظ كما هي،

- go → **went**

eat → **ate**

بأبي الجملة + مصدر الفعل **didn't + inf** + فاعل **subject**

بأبي الجملة + التصريف الثاني للفعل + **never** + **subject**

- We **didn't go** to the park.

- Osama **didn't play** tennis.

- He **never ate** sushi.



? باقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل inf + فاعل + **Did + subject** (كلمة استفهام)

### Question

#### السؤال

- Did you **change** your phone?

وتكون الإجابة إما بـ **Yes** في حالة الإثبات أو بـ **No** في حالة النفي.

- **Yes, I did.** / - **No, I didn't.**

- When did you **travel** to London? - I **travelled** two years ago.

- yesterday / last (week / month / year) / ago / in the past / in + year (in 2010)

### Keywords

#### الكلمات الدالة

### Important Notes

### ملاحظات هامة

#### Verb to be in the past

#### فعل يكون في الماضي

|                              |             |
|------------------------------|-------------|
| I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد | <b>was</b>  |
| We/ You / They / اسم جمع     | <b>were</b> |

- In the past, there **were** no cars.

- Ashraf **was** born in 1989.

لا نستخدم **did** أو **didn't** في حالة النفي أو الاستفهام مع الفعل يكون **verb to be** في زمن الماضي البسيط.

- Shady and Martin **were** at school yesterday.

- Shady and Martin **were** at school yesterday.

- Did Adam **be** with his father? (x)

- Was Adam with his father? (✓)

### ضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة لإكمال النص.

The area where the Nok people lived ❶ **was** / **were** in Nigeria. People ❷ **found** / **find** sculptures in this area, and archaeologists ❸ **go** / **went** there to study them. The Nok culture was advanced, and its people ❹ **make** / **made** sculptures from clay, and tools from stone and iron. Their sculptures were usually of humans. These ❺ **was** / **were** beautifully made and ❻ **had** / **has** unusual eyes and hair styles. There is no written information about the Nok culture, so we don't know much about the people even now.



## brackets:

أكمل الجمل بصيغة الماضي البسيط للفاعل بين القوسين :

1. Fares ~~was~~ angry with his brother yesterday. (be)
2. We ..... a great time at the carnival! (have)
3. Jana and Gameela ..... pizza for us last night. (make)
4. My family ..... on vacation last year. (go)
5. Nader and Walid ..... in my class last year. (be)
6. The archaeologists ..... many old tools. (find)



## Write the correct form of the verb in brackets.

كون جمل مستخدماً الكلمات. قم بصياغة الأفعال في الماضي البسيط:

1. she / go / to the library / last week  
.....
2. he / be / very happy  
.....
3. they / make / a cake  
.....
4. he / have / a lot of homework  
.....



## 4 Circle the correct answer:

ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. Hany didn't ~~go~~ went on the palace tour with the guide.
2. Did your mom ~~made~~ make your dress, Leila? Yes, she ~~did~~ / didn't
3. We didn't ~~have~~ had a good meal in that restaurant.
4. The water in the sea ~~weren't~~ / wasn't warm.
5. Where did you ~~find~~ found your books? They ~~was~~ were in my bag.

# Activities



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- ..... means modern or well developed. (2023) المتطورة  
☐ a Advanced ☐ b Clay ☒ c Fascinating ☐ d Shy
- A ..... is a group of camels and people traveling together.  
☒ a car ☐ b bus ☐ c plane ☐ d caravan
- My uncle is a/an ..... He studies very old objects. (2023)  
☐ a chef ☐ b mechanic ☐ c vet ☐ d archaeologist
- In fields, farmers use iron ..... for farming.  
☐ a pens ☐ b books ☐ c tools ☐ d balls
- ..... is a type of earth that is sticky when wet. (2023)  
☒ a Metal ☐ b Clay ☐ c Paper ☐ d Wood
- ..... are art made from stone or wood.  
☐ a Pens ☐ b Sculptures ☐ c Mystery ☐ d Countries
- We should be proud of our country's .....  
☐ a mystery ☐ b civilization ☐ c tools ☐ d games

## 2 Read the following text and answer the questions:

(2023) اقرأ النص التالي واجب عن الأسئلة:

Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria, a country in west Africa, found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style. They had large eyes and complicated hair styles. They were usually in a sitting position with their hands on their legs. The quality of the work was **incredible**. A team of archaeologists went to the area to find out more. They called this culture the "Nok" civilization, but it is still a mystery today.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- Nok is a small ..... in Nigeria.  
☐ a town ☐ b city ☐ c village ☐ d hotel
- Archaeologists are persons who study .....  
☐ a old things ☐ b modern things ☐ c geography ☐ d math
- The sculptures were made of .....  
☐ a wood ☐ b clay ☐ c stone ☐ d sand



## Amazing journeys

### B- Answer the following questions:

- Where did the local people find the unusual objects?
- How were the sculptures they found?

### 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- your - trip - How - , Kareem - was?
- were - style - the same - all - in - the same style
- a mystery - culture - The - still - today - is.
- went to - find out - the area - Arandee - to - more

### 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- My family ..... **(go)** on vacation last year. (2023)
- We ..... **(don't)** visit Aswan last summer. (2023) القاهرة
- The children ..... **(don't)** do their homework yesterday. (2023)
- Did you ..... **(played)** well? (2023)
- Did your mom ..... **(had)** a new dress? (2023)
- Ahmed and Omar ..... **(was)** in the park yesterday. (2023)
- I went to the zoo but I ..... **(don't)** see the lion. (2023)
- She ..... **(finds)** the keys under the chair yesterday.
- ..... **(Is)** he happy in Aswan last year? (2023)

### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

my family went on a vacation



# Lesson 3

## Part 1

# Marco Polo crosses the desert

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| caravan    | قافلة       |
| fascinated | منبهر       |
| sand dunes | كثبان رملية |

|           |                       |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| wander    | يتجول                 |
| wasteland | الأرض القاحلة / البور |
| legend    | قصة خرافية / اسطورة   |

## Adjectives & Adverbs

### Adjective صفة

|             |      |
|-------------|------|
| dangerous   | خطير |
| empty       | فارغ |
| lost        | تائه |
| frightening | مخيف |
| mysterious  | غامض |

### Adverb حال

|          |      |
|----------|------|
| silently | بصمت |
| slowly   | ببطء |

## Other words

## كلمات أخرى



|             |                          |             |                       |
|-------------|--------------------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| adventure   | مغامرة                   | dromedaries | الجمال (وحيدة السنام) |
| Gobi Desert | صحراء جوبي               | Noah Oasis  | واحة نوح              |
| horizon     | الأفق                    | waves       | أمواج                 |
| Lop Nur     | صحراء لوب نور (في الصين) |             |                       |

## Conjugation of verbs

## تحويل الفعل

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

#### Past ماضٍ

#### Present مضارع

#### Past ماضٍ

|      |              |        |
|------|--------------|--------|
| move | يتحرك        | moved  |
| roll | يلف / يتدحرج | rolled |
| last | يدوم         | lasted |
| sway | يتأرجح       | swayed |

|        |             |       |
|--------|-------------|-------|
| freeze | يتجمد       | froze |
| can    | يستطيع      | could |
| lose   | يفضل / يتوه | lost  |

\* يوجد نوعان من الجمال : الجمال وحيدة السنام وهي الموجودة في المنطقة العربية والجمال ثنائية السنام في أوروبا وباقي الدول.





|               |                 |   |
|---------------|-----------------|---|
| fascinated by | منبهرب          | very interested in                              |
| caravan       | قافلة           | a group of camels and people traveling together |
| swaying       | متارجح          | moving from side to side                        |
| wasteland     | أرض قاحلة / بور | a landscape where nothing lives                 |
| wandered      | تجول            | walked about without a direction                |
| legend        | قصة خرافية      | a very old and famous story                     |



## Study the following

- 1 Marco Polo was twenty-one when he went into the Gobi Desert.  
كان ماركو بولو في الحادية والعشرين من عمره عندما ذهب إلى صحراء جوبي.
- 2 He was fascinated by the sand dunes.  
كان مفتونًا بالكثبان الرملية.
- 3 Sand dunes moved with each step the camels made.  
تحركت الكثبان الرملية مع كل خطوة اتخذتها الجمال.
- 4 The wind made them move and roll like huge waves.  
جعلتهم الرياح يتحركون ويتدحرجون مثل الأمواج الهائلة.
- 5 Local people called the Gobi Desert the dry sea.  
أطلق السكان المحليون على صحراء جوبي "البحر الجاف".
- 6 It was a mysterious and dangerous place.  
كان مكانًا غامضًا وخطيرًا.
- 7 By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold.  
في النهار، كان الجو شديد الحرارة، وفي الليل، كان البرد قارسًا.
- 8 There were many strange legends about this desert.  
كان هناك العديد من الأساطير الغريبة عن هذه الصحراء.



استمع كيف كانت تبدو الصحراء لماركو بولو، لماذا؟

## Tapescript



استمع إلى النص:



Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert<sup>(1)</sup> for the first time. He was fascinated<sup>(2)</sup> by the sand dunes<sup>(3)</sup> which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes<sup>(4)</sup> were always changing. The wind made them move and roll<sup>(5)</sup> like huge yellow waves<sup>(6)</sup>. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language.

The dromedaries<sup>(7)</sup> in the caravan<sup>(8)</sup> moved slowly up and down the dunes, swaying<sup>(9)</sup> like big ships over the ocean. They went toward Lop Nur<sup>(10)</sup>, the last village before the empty wasteland<sup>(11)</sup> of the desert. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers – no people, no plants, no water.

It was a mysterious<sup>(12)</sup> and dangerous<sup>(13)</sup> place. By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold – sometimes there was snow. They went on slowly<sup>(14)</sup>, but often the wind made strange noises, like voices singing and drums playing far away. There were many strange legends<sup>(15)</sup> about this desert. People said that travelers<sup>(16)</sup> who were lost long ago in the desert wandered<sup>(17)</sup> there still ...

Before they left Lop Nur, Marco made sure they had enough food and water for the men and the animals to last<sup>(18)</sup> for one month. After exactly thirty days of traveling across that frightening<sup>(19)</sup>, empty land, they finally saw the green line of Noah Oasis<sup>(20)</sup> on the horizon<sup>(21)</sup>. They had no water and no food left and the animals were exhausted<sup>(22)</sup>, but their desert adventure<sup>(23)</sup> was over. They were in China!

### Arabic Meaning

١- صحراء جوبي

٢- مبهّر

٣- كثبان رملية

٤- أشكال

٥- يتدحرج

٦- أمواج

٧- جمال احادية السهم

٨- قافلة

٩- متارجح

١٠- صحراء لوب نور

١١- الأرض المأهولة

١٢- غامض

١٣- خطير

١٤- بصمت

١٥- أساطير

١٦- مسافرون

١٧- تجولوا

١٨- يدوم

١٩- محيف

٢٠- واحة نوح

٢١- الأفق

٢٢- منهك

٢٣- معامرة

الصفات والاحوال في النص وتعلم اهمية استخدامهم حيث تساعد القارئ على تخيل ما يحدث وتساعد القارئ ايضا في فهم كيف تشعر الشخصيات.

# The Mysterious Land

## Pronunciation

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|                   |              |             |            |
|-------------------|--------------|-------------|------------|
| light of a candle | ضوء شمعة     | island      | جزيرة      |
| comes up          | تشرق (الشمس) | port        | ميناء      |
| palm trees        | أشجار النخيل | telescope   | تلسكوب     |
| perhaps           | ربما         | the captain | القائد     |
| exhausted         | مرهق         | small cabin | حجرة صغيرة |
| terrible          | فظيع / سيئ   | writer      | كاتب       |

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

last يبدو  
seem يبدو

lasted  
seemed

### Study the following

- 1 Today was a long boring day with terrible weather.  
كان اليوم يومًا طويلًا مملاً مع طقس سيئ.
- 2 My journey to the mysterious island wasn't possible.  
لم تكن رحلتي إلى الجزيرة الغامضة ممكنة.
- 3 I can see the island through my telescope.  
استطيع أن أرى الجزيرة من خلال التلسكوب الخاص بي.
- 4 The beaches are white and sandy with many palm trees.  
الشواطئ بيضاء ورملية وبها العديد من أشجار النخيل.
- 5 There are green mountains at its center.  
هناك جبال خضراء في وسطها.
- 6 I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin last night.  
لقد نمت هادئًا في حجرتي الليلة الماضية.
- 7 I had breakfast with the others on the ship.  
تناولت الإفطار مع الآخرين على متن السفينة.

1 Listen and read to the page from an 18<sup>th</sup> century diary. Where was he when he wrote it?

استمع واقرأ صفحة من يوميات كاتب من القرن الثامن عشر. أين كان عندما كتبه؟

Tapescript

نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



## THE MYSTERIOUS LAND

### Day 1, January 17<sup>th</sup>

Today was a long, boring day with terrible weather. The ship didn't leave the port, so my journey to the mysterious island wasn't possible – I can see the island through my telescope. The beaches are white and sandy with many palm trees and there are green mountains at its center. It's exciting to imagine what I could find there. I'm sure I'll travel there soon.

#### Arabic Vocabulary

- ١- سئ
- ٢- ميناء
- ٣- تلسكوب
- ٤- رملي
- ٥- أشجار النخيل
- ٦- ضوء شمعة
- ٧- صغير
- ٨- حجرة/مقصورة
- ٩- ربما
- ١٠- القائد
- ١١- تشرق

### Day 2, January 19<sup>th</sup>

I was sad all day yesterday. The weather was still bad and there were strong winds. I went for long walks around the ship to pass the time during the day. In the evening, I had nothing to do but read my book by the light of a candle in my small cabin. Today the sky is a bit clearer – there is some hope for my journey perhaps – but time seems to move very slowly in this place.

### Day 3, January 21<sup>st</sup>

I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin last night, and this morning I had breakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the captain – tomorrow the weather will be good with no wind, so we can go to the island in the morning. The ship will leave when the sun comes up. I'm very excited: soon I can explore the mysterious island!



# Pronunciation

/dʒ/

لنطق هذا الصوت نطق حرف d  
ثم (ج) المعطشة وتمثله  
الحروف d/j في الكلمات الآتية / d /



damage

يدمر



huge

ضخم



fridge

ثلاجة



Japan

اليابان



luggage

أمتعة



bridge

كوبري



villa

قرية

/ʒ/

ينطق هذا الصوت كما نطق  
حرف ال (ج) المعطشة وتمثله  
الحروف (si / su) في الكلمات الآتية



treasure

كنز



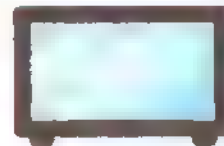
measure

يقيس



Asia

آسيا



television

تلفزيون

one

عمر

joke

نكتة

dangerous

خطير

erry

جيري (اسم شخص)

arrange

يرتب

just

توًّا

language

لغة

cake

قفس

/ʒ/

usually

عادة

leisure

رفاهية

pleasure

سرور

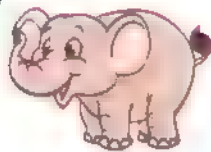


2

Listen, read, and repeat.

انظر واسمع وردد:

1



huge

2



fridge

3



measure

4



treasure

3

Listen, read, and repeat. Put the words in the correct column.

استمع. ضع خط تحت الصوت /dʒ/ أو /ʒ/. ثم اكتب الكلمات في العمود الصحيح في الجدول.

1. usually

2. age

3. joke

4. leisure

5. Asia

6. dangerous

7. language

8. television

9. cage

| العمود الأول |       | العمود الثاني |       |
|--------------|-------|---------------|-------|
| .....        | ..... | .....         | ..... |
| .....        | ..... | .....         | ..... |
| .....        | ..... | .....         | ..... |
| .....        | ..... | .....         | ..... |

4

Listen, read, and

استمع واقرأ وردد:

1. The bridge in the village is damaged and dangerous.
2. On television, they said that in Asia they found too much treasure to measure.
3. Jerry just arranged to send his luggage to Japan.
4. I usually play games for leisure and pleasure.



# Activities

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

(2020)

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة



1. Marco Polo went to the Gobi Desert in .....

☐ a 1250

☐ b 1275

☐ c 1260

☐ d 1270

2. Marco Polo was fascinated by the .....

☐ a water

☐ b sand dunes

☐ c planes

☐ d sea

3. The sand dunes were like huge yellow .....

☐ a pens

☐ b waves

☐ c camels

☐ d plants

4. The ..... in the caravan move slowly up and down the dunes

☐ a sand

☐ b dromedaries

☐ c plants

☐ d water

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. There's nothing in the bag. It's .....

(2020) القسوة

☐ a far

☐ b empty

☐ c silent

☐ d colorful

2. My dad worked for 12 hours yesterday, so he was .....

(2020)

☐ a exhausted

☐ b scared

☐ c frightened

☐ d pleased

3. We can ride ..... across the desert.

☐ a ships

☐ b dromedaries

☐ c boats

☐ d shops

4. Marco Polo used his ..... to see the island.

(2020) الرعب

☐ a microscope

☐ b caravan

☐ c telescope

☐ d nightmare

5. .... are groups of camels and people traveling together.

☐ a Islands

☐ b Oases

☐ c Sand dunes

☐ d Caravans

6. The ship left the ..... to travel to the island.

☐ a airport

☐ b port

☐ c station

☐ d bus stop



### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**desert - legends - fascinated - weather - explorer**

I read an interesting book about Marco Polo. He was a famous **explorer**.  
He was **fascinated** by the sand dunes. He loved the desert. There were many  
strange **legends** about the desert. People said that travelers who were lost  
long ago in the **desert** wandered there still.

### 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. fascinated - sand dunes - **He** - by - was - the.
2. had breakfast - the ship - with - **he** - the others - on.
3. can - island - explore - **he** - the mysteries.
4. Gobi Desert - **it** - the dry - called - the - sea.

### 5 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إرشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

A Journey you went in the past

مجاب آخر الوحدة

#### Guiding questions

- 1- Where did you go?
- 2- How did you feel?



# Lesson 4

## Writing

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



sail  
skills

شراع  
مهارات

magical  
mood

سحري  
الجو العام (مزاج)

### Adjectives

amazing

مدهش

lovely

جميل

awesome

مذهل

peaceful

هادئ / ساكن / آمن

delicious

لذيذ

quiet

هادئ

difficult

صعب

relaxing

مريح

huge

ضخم

traditional

تقليدي

incredible

لا يصدق

wonderful

رائع

### أحوال

### أحوال

beautifully

بطريقة جميلة

gently

بلطف / برفق

### Other words

### كلمات أخرى



experience

تجربة حياتية

felucca

مركب شراعي

captain

قائد

sunshine

شروق الشمس

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

sail يبحر  
stop يتوقف

sailed  
stopped

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

go يذهب  
make يصنع

went  
made

skills

مهارات

the ability to deal with something well

sail

شراع

a large piece of cloth on a boat that makes the wind push the boat

magical

سحري / فاتن / نديع

very enjoyable and exciting

felucca

مركب شراعى

a traditional Egyptian sailing boat

## Study the following

- 1 Today I had an amazing experience. اليوم مررت بتجربة رائعة.
- 2 I went on a felucca on the River Nile! ذهبت في فلوكة في نهر النيل!
- 3 A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. الفلوكة هو قارب شراعى مصري تقليدي (قديم).
- 4 A felucca is difficult to sail. يصعب الإبحار بالفلوكة.
- 5 We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. ذهبنا ببطء أسفل النهر تحت أشعة الشمس الدافئة.
- 6 The boat had two white sails. كان للقارب شراعان أبيضان.
- 7 It was so quiet and peaceful – a lovely way to travel. كانت هادئة وأمنة - طريقة رائعة للسفر.
- 8 We stopped to see some incredible things along the way. توقفنا لرؤية بعض الأشياء الرائعة على طول الطريق.
- 9 I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life. رأيت أهرامات الجيزة لأول مرة في حياتي.



## Simon

Today, I had an **amazing** experience<sup>(1)</sup>... I went on a **felucca**<sup>(2)</sup> on the River Nile! A felucca is a **traditional**<sup>(3)</sup> Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood.

A tall man called Kareem was the **captain**<sup>(4)</sup> of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the **skills** to do it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the **afternoon**<sup>(5)</sup>. The boat had two white **sails** which moved **gently**<sup>(6)</sup> in the wind. It was so quiet and **peaceful**<sup>(7)</sup>— a lovely way to travel.

We stopped to see some **incredible**<sup>(8)</sup> things along the way, too. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life. They were **awesome**<sup>(9)</sup>! The pyramids were huge and the stones were the color of gold. The Great Pyramid, the tallest of the three pyramids, is 147 meters high. It was **wonderful**<sup>(10)</sup>.

In the afternoon, we had a **delicious**<sup>(11)</sup> lunch on board the felucca and there was a man playing traditional Egyptian **music** on an oud. He played **beautifully**<sup>(12)</sup> and the music was **magical**<sup>(13)</sup> and relaxing. What a day! I had such a wonderful experience!

### Arabic Meaning

١- تجربة مذهبة

٢- مركب شراعي

٣- تقليدي

٤- قائد

٥- اشرافه ذافئة

٦- برفق

٧- ساكنة وامسة

٨- لا يصدق

٩- مذهش

١٠- رائع

١١- لذت

١٢- بطريقة حميلة

١٣- بديع / فائن

اقرأ اليومية مرة اخرى واجب على الاسئلة. اكتب جمل كاملة:

1. Where did the writer go?

The writer went on a trip down the River Nile on a felucca.

2. How does the writer describe the captain of the boat?

3. What was the mood on the boat?

4. What did the writer think of the Great Pyramid?

5. What did they do in the afternoon?

6. What was the music like?

# Activities



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: (2023)

1. I went on a ..... on the River Nile. (2023)

- ☐ a car ☐ b felucca ☐ c bus ☐ d taxi

2. Our trip to Aswan was ..... We were all happy.

- ☐ a amazing ☐ b bad ☐ c terrible ☐ d sad

3. The Pyramids in Giza were ..... (2023)

- ☐ a small ☐ b tiny ☐ c huge ☐ d not big

4. The ..... sailed the ship to the shore. (2023)

- ☐ a teacher ☐ b captain ☐ c nurse ☐ d vet

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2023) اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**skills - captain - felucca - plane - strong**

Today, I had an incredible experience sailing on a ..... on the River Nile. The ..... of the felucca is called Kareem. He was very ..... and had the ..... to sail it.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ الآن ثم أجب عن الأسئلة: (2023)

Last week, I went on a felucca on the River Nile. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life. They were awesome. The Pyramids were **huge** and the stones were the color of gold. The Great Pyramid, the tallest of the three Pyramids, is 147 meters high. It was wonderful. What a day! I had such a wonderful experience in the afternoon, we had a delicious lunch on board the felucca and there was a man playing traditional Egyptian music on an oud. He played beautifully and the music was magical and relaxing. What a day I had such a wonderful experience.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d (2023)

1. The text is about a wonderful day on the .....

- ☐ a Pyramids ☐ b Nile ☐ c garden ☐ d desert

2. The word "**huge**" means very .....

- ☐ a short ☐ b small ☐ c big ☐ d fast





## Amazing journeys

3. He went on a felucca

☐ yesterday

☐ tomorrow

☐ today

☐ last week

### B- Answer the following questions:

4. How high is the great pyramid?

5. When did he have lunch?

### 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. has - white - two - The boat - sails

2. had - experience - Today - an amazing - I.

3. Egyptian -            - sailing - boat - a traditional - is.

(2023)

4. had - We - lunch - a delicious - on board - felucca - the

### 5 Write a diary entry of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مذكرة يومية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

A beautiful place

#### Guiding questions

1- How and when did you go there?

2- What was the weather like?

5. Amazing

# Review



## Key vocabulary



ride a camel  
يركب الجمل



travel by train  
يسافر بالقطار



sail by ship  
يبحر بالسفينة



go on a journey  
يذهب في رحلة طويلة



go on a voyage  
يذهب في رحلة بحرية



take a trip  
يقوم برحلة قصيرة

|               |            |             |                       |
|---------------|------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| advanced      | متقدم      | tool        | أداة                  |
| sculptures    | منحوتات    | sway        | يتأرجح                |
| clay          | صلصال      | wander      | يتجول                 |
| archaeologist | عالم آثار  | wasteland   | الأرض القاحلة / البور |
| caravan       | قافلة      | legend      | قصة خرافية            |
| fascinated    | منبهر      | port        | ميناء                 |
| adventure     | مغامرة     | telescope   | تليسكوب               |
| exhausted     | مرهق       | small cabin | حجرة صغيرة            |
| terrible      | فظيع / سيئ | felucca     | قارب شراعي            |
| inspiration   | إلهام      |             |                       |

## Adverbs

## أحوال

|             |              |        |              |
|-------------|--------------|--------|--------------|
| beautifully | بطريقة جميلة | gently | بلطف / برفق  |
| silently    | بصمت         | slowly | بطريقة بطيئة |





## Adjectives

|            |             |             |                   |
|------------|-------------|-------------|-------------------|
| dangerous  | خطير        | peaceful    | هادئ / امن / ساكن |
| empty      | فارغ        | relaxing    | مريح              |
| lost       | ناه         | huge        | ضخم               |
| mysterious | غامض        | incredible  | لا يصدق           |
| awesome    | مذهل        | lovely      | جميل              |
| difficult  | صعب         | traditional | تقليدي            |
| magical    | سحري / بديع |             |                   |

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

| Present مضارع        | Past ماضٍ    |
|----------------------|--------------|
| imagine يتخيل        | imagined     |
| sail يسبح            | sailed       |
| call after يسمي باسم | called after |
| move يتحرك           | moved        |
| roll يلف / يتدحرج    | rolled       |
| last يدوم            | lasted       |

### Irregular verbs

| Present مضارع   | Past ماضٍ |
|-----------------|-----------|
| fly يطير        | flew      |
| ride يركب       | rode      |
| say يقول        | said      |
| leave يغادر     | left      |
| lose يتوه / يضل | lost      |
| know يعرف       | knew      |

### Usage

### Form

1

Usage  
الاستخدام

يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث أو مواقف تمت وانتهت في الماضي.

- My uncle **visited** us.

\_\_\_\_\_

subject (فاعل) + verb (فعل في التصريف الثاني)

- My friend **bought** a new phone.

2

Form  
التكوين

تنقسم الأفعال في التصريف الثاني الى أفعال منتظمة وغير منتظمة.

أولاً: الأفعال المنتظمة وهي التي تنتهي بـ **d, ed, ied**.

- like → liked

- cook → cooked

- study → studied

ثانياً: الأفعال الغير منتظمة وهذه الأفعال لا يضاف اليها **ed** وتحفظ كما هي:

- go → **went**                      eat → **ate**

- We **studied** our science lesson.

- She **went** to the theme park.

- He **met** his friend Ayman.

باقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل **inf** + **didn't** + فاعل **subject**

باقي الجملة + التصريف الثاني للفعل + **never** + **subject**

3

Negative  
النفى

- We **didn't** go to the park.

- Osama **never** played tennis.

باقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل **inf** + فاعل **subject** + **Did** + (كلمة استفهام)

Question  
السؤال

- **Did** you **change** your phone?

وتكون الإجابة إما بـ **Yes** في حالة الإثبات أو بـ **No** في حالة النفي

- **Yes**, I **did**.                      - **No**, I **didn't**.

- **When** did you **travel** to London?

- I **traveled** two years ago.

yesterday / last (week / month / year) / ago /  
in the past / in + year - in (2010)

5

Keywords  
الكلمات  
الدالة

- He **went** to Giza city last week.



## Exercises for paragraphs (essays) in Arabic

### Exercise 1

#### A beautiful day at the beach

1

I went to the beach, and it was wonderful! The sand was soft and warm. The soft wind touched my face. It was nice. I enjoyed making sandcastles. The sun was shining, and I enjoyed swimming in the water. It was a beautiful day at the beach.

### Exercise 2

#### A beautiful place

2

Dear Diary,

Today was an exciting day! I went on a trip to a beautiful place. The place was wonderful, with mountains and rivers all around. We took a taxi and reached an amazing place. I took lots of pictures with my friends. It was an amazing trip that I will remember.

### Exercise 3

#### A trip on the River Nile

3

I went on a trip down the River Nile. I went by felucca. The felucca was difficult to sail, but a tall man called Samy was the captain of the boat. He was very strong and had the skills to sail it. We went down the river in the warm sunshine.

### Exercise 4

4

#### New Message

To laila33@hotmail.com



Cc Bcc

From fatma14@gmail.com

Subject Marco Polo - A famous traveler

Dear Laila,

Thanks for your last email. How are you? I want to tell you about the famous traveler Marco Polo. He was born in the 13th century. He was famous for his great journey to Asia and his adventures and experiences with different cultures. His journeys were very fantastic.

Best wishes,

Fatma



# Al-Azhar Test

الاختبار الخاص بالازهر الشريف

**Read and complete the dialog:**

أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

did - see - felucca - went - catch

A : Where did you go yesterday?

B : I ① ..... on the Nile River!

A : What did you ② ..... there?

B : I saw a ③ ..... fish?

A : Did you ④ ..... fish?

B : Yes, I ⑤ .....

**Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:**

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفه واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

|   |            |        |         |          |       |
|---|------------|--------|---------|----------|-------|
| ① | train      | car    | taxi    | Hurghada | ----  |
| ② | voyage     | poem   | journey | trip     | ----- |
| ③ | fascinated | train  | magical | advanced | ----- |
| ④ | ride       | travel | ship    | sail     | ----  |
| ⑤ | north      | south  | trip    | west     | ----- |

**Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابه الصحيحه:

1. Hani didn't ..... on the palace tour with the guide.

- ☐ a go     
 ☐ b went     
 ☐ c goes     
 ☐ d going

2. Gold is a type of .....

- ☐ a wood     
 ☐ b metal     
 ☐ c juice     
 ☐ d pens

3. The weather was still ..... and there were strong winds.

- ☐ a terrible     
 ☐ b nice     
 ☐ c fine     
 ☐ d happy

4. We didn't ..... a vacation this year.

- ☐ a has     
 ☐ b had     
 ☐ c have     
 ☐ d having



## Amazing journeys

5. Fares ..... angry with his brother yesterday.  
☐ a is                      ☐ b were                      ☐ c was                      ☐ d am
6. The ..... is a group of camels and people traveling together.  
☐ a wasteland                      ☐ b caravan                      ☐ c festival                      ☐ d legend
7. We are ..... by the wonderful view of the fields.  
☐ a tired                      ☐ b empty                      ☐ c fascinated                      ☐ d ugly
8. This place was quiet and ..... I could relax.  
☐ a bad                      ☐ b scary                      ☐ c peaceful                      ☐ d sad
9. To ..... means to move from side to side.  
☐ a eat                      ☐ b ask                      ☐ c sway                      ☐ d explore
10. They went towards the empty ..... of the desert.  
☐ a wasteland                      ☐ b river                      ☐ c room                      ☐ d farm

### 4 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Ahmed had a relaxing sleep in his cabin last night, and this morning he had breakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the captain. The captain said that the weather was good with no wind, so we could go to the island in the morning. The ship left at 6 am. Ahmed was very excited.

#### A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where did Ahmed have a relaxing sleep?
2. When did Ahmed have his breakfast?
3. Who said that the weather was good?

#### B. Choose the correct answer:

4. The ..... left at 6 am.  
☐ a ship                      ☐ b train                      ☐ c bus                      ☐ d bike
5. Ahmed was very .....  
☐ a happy                      ☐ b sad                      ☐ c excited                      ☐ d bad

## 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. you - How - there - did - travel?

2. was - Where - last - your - vacation?

3. was - a famous - \_\_\_\_\_ - about - museum - traveler.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ - dunes - are - the - big - sand?

5. you - legend - \_\_\_\_\_ - the - hear?

## 6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجايب آخر الوحدة

فيلوكا

felucca - sail - captain - warm - sunshine



# Test on Unit 5

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Mrs Esraa is a teacher of .....

☐ a Arabic

☐ b math

☐ c English

☐ d science

2. Mrs Esraa likes traveling to .....

☐ a one place

☐ b different places

☐ c America

☐ d Italy

3. Mrs Esraa has ..... children.

☐ a 3

☐ b 4

☐ c 2

☐ d 5

4. Mrs Esraa went to Giza and visited the .....

☐ a Pyramids

☐ b Egyptian museum

☐ c Cairo Tower

☐ d station

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A ..... is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat.

☐ a bus

☐ b car

☐ c felucca

☐ d train

2. Marco Polo was an Italian .....

☐ a archeologist

☐ b explorer

☐ c scientist

☐ d architect

3. The weather was ....., so the ship didn't leave the port.

☐ a terrible

☐ b cool

☐ c amazing

☐ d exciting

4. A ..... is a very old and famous story.

☐ a caravan

☐ b legend

☐ c landscape

☐ d port

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2023)

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

skills - captain - felucca - Ali - plane

Today, I had an incredible experience. I went on a ..... on the River Nile.

The ..... of the felucca is very clever. He is called ..... . He was

very strong and had the ..... to sail it. It's a lovely way to travel.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



#### 4 Read the following text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص التالي واجب عن الأسئلة: (2020) لغفص

6 January

Today I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood.

A tall man called Sherif was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Sherif was very strong and had the skills to sail it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat had two white sails which moved gently in the wind. It was so **quiet** and peaceful lovely way to travel.

#### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about .....

☐ a strong man

☐ b amazing experience

☐ c the Nile River

☐ d warm weather

2. The felucca is made of .....

☐ a metal

☐ b wool

☐ c wood

☐ d leather

3. The opposite of the underlined word "**quiet**" is .....

☐ a noisy

☐ b traditional

☐ c lovely

☐ d difficult

#### B- Answer the following questions:

4. What is the felucca? .....

5. How was the trip? .....

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. had - I - a relaxing - in my cabin - sleep.

2. an - explorer - Italian - he - was. (2020)

3. on - a felucca - the Nile - on - we - River - went. (2020)

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Were (Be) you happy in the park yesterday?

2. She didn't (don't) read a story last week.



## 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

marco polo was a famous traveler.

## 8 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

To your friend Laila to tell her about a famous traveler. Your name is Fatma and your email address is fatma14@gmail.com and your friend's email address is laila33@hotmail.com.

### Guiding questions

- 1- Who is the traveler?
- 2- Why was he famous?

### New Message

To .....

Cc Bcc

From .....

Subject .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

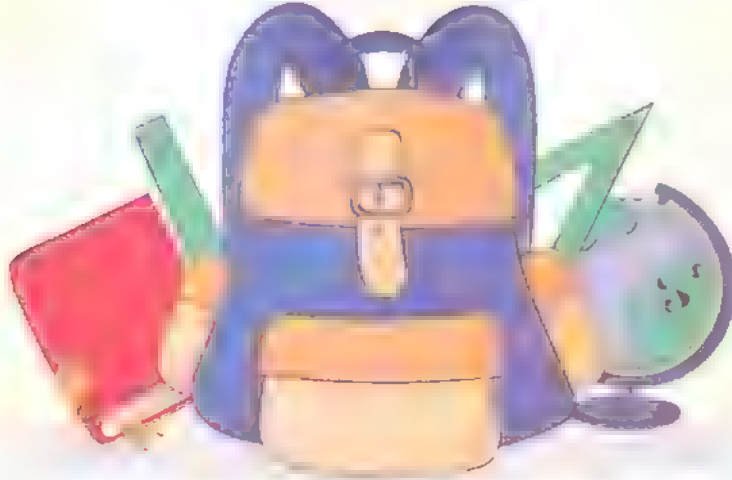
.....

.....

# Myself and others

## Taking care

العناية بالنفس



### Objectives of the Unit

### أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about making things at home and how to take care of one's self.

يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن صنع الأشياء في المنزل وكيفية الاعتناء بالنفس.

2. Talk about quantities.

يتحدث الطالب عن الكميات.

3. Find the meaning of words in a text

يجد الطالب معنى الكلمات في النص.

4. Learn about personal care in Ancient Egypt.

يتعلم الطالب عن العناية الشخصية في مصر القديمة.

5. Write instructions to make something and quantities of ingredients.

يكتب الطالب التعليمات لصنع شيء وكميات المقادير.

6. Research and create a poster about different spices.

يبحث الطالب ويعمل ملصق عن التوابل المختلفة.

# Lesson 1

## Let's make candles!

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



perfume oil  
زيت عطري



wax  
مادة الشمع (خام)



drop  
قطرة



فتيل (الشمعة)

### making candles

صناعة الشمع



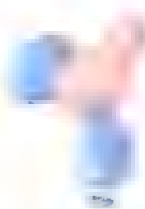
popsicle sticks  
عصي الايس كريم

### Important verbs

افعال هامة



(ed)  
يسخن



(d)  
يعصر



(ed)  
يضغط



(red)  
يقلب

Help your child learn new words about making candles.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كلمات جديدة عن صناعة الشمع.



## Words about measurements

## كلمات عن القياسات

|           |            |             |                    |
|-----------|------------|-------------|--------------------|
| cans      | علب        | milliliters | ملليلترات          |
| grams     | جرامات     | packages    | حِزم / رزم / عبوات |
| kilograms | كيلوجرامات | spoons      | ملاعق              |
| liters    | لترات      | glasses     | زجاجات             |

## Other words

## الكلمات الأخرى



|              |                      |             |              |
|--------------|----------------------|-------------|--------------|
| candle       | شمعة                 | in mind     | في ذهنك      |
| wooden       | خشبي                 | lemon oil   | زيت الليمون  |
| hard         | صلب                  | palm trees  | أشجار النخيل |
| cooker       | بوتاجاز / موقد       | palm wax    | شمع النخيل   |
| ingredients  | مكونات               | cotton rope | حبل من القطن |
| container    | وعاء                 | step        | خطوة         |
| flower petal | بتلات (أوراق الزهرة) | salt        | ملح          |
| instructions | تعليمات              | sugar       | سكر          |

## Conjugation of verbs

## التركيبات

### Regular verbs

### أفعال منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

#### Past ماضٍ

|      |       |                    |
|------|-------|--------------------|
| need | يحتاج | need <sup>ed</sup> |
| stir | يقلب  | stir <sup>ed</sup> |
| add  | يضيف  | add <sup>ed</sup>  |

### Irregular verbs

### أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

#### Past ماضٍ

|          |                  |                 |
|----------|------------------|-----------------|
| smell    | يشم / يصدر رائحة | smelt / smelled |
| hold up  | يمسك لأعلى       | held up         |
| read out | يقرأ بصوت عال    | read out        |

wick

فتيل

the little cotton rope inside the candle



## Taking care



### Study the following

- 1 I love making things. أحب صنع الأشياء.
- 2 Do you have something in mind? هل تفكر في شيء ما؟
- 3 Here are the instructions for making the candles. ها هي تعليمات صنع الشموع.
- 4 It's palm wax from Egyptian palm trees. إنه شمع النخيل من أشجار النخيل المصرية.
- 5 How much do we need? كم الكمية التي نحتاجها؟
- 6 We need some perfume oil. نحتاج إلى بعض الزيوت العطرية.
- 7 These are little bottles of lemon oil. هذه زجاجات صغيرة من زيت الليمون.
- 8 Squeeze in about 40 drops of oil. اعصر حوالي ٤٠ قطرة من الزيت.
- 9 We need one glass for each candle and one wick. نحتاج كأسًا واحدًا وفتيل واحد لكل شمعة.
- 10 A wick is a little cotton rope inside the candle. الفتيل هو عبارة عن حبل قطني صغير داخل الشمعة.
- 11 We need some popsicle sticks to hold the wicks up in the glasses. نحتاج إلى بعض عصي الآيس كريم لتثبيت الفتائل في الأكواب.
- 12 Heat the wax to melt it, then stir it well. سخن الشمع لإذابته ، ثم قلبه جيدًا.

## Language Functions

## وظائف اللغة

### 1 Instruction تعليمات

⊙ عند إعطاء التعليمات، إما نبدأ بمصدر الفعل "inf" في حالة الأمر المثبت أو نبدأ بـ "Don't + inf" في حالة النفي؛

- Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles.
- Don't forget your book, Sally.

### 2 How much / How many كم / كم

⊙ للسؤال عن الكميات نستخدم How much?

- How much wax do we need?

⊙ للسؤال عن العدد نستخدم How many?

- How many drops of oil do we need?



Listen and read. What do Laila and her mom make?

استمع واقرأ. ماذا تصنع ليلي ووالدتها؟

## Tape script



استمع إلى النص:



**Mom** : Hi, Laila, I love making things. Why don't we make something now?

**Laila** : That's a great idea. Do you have something in mind?

**Mom** : I have some **perfume oil**<sup>(1)</sup>. We can use it to make candles.

**Laila** : Candles? Wow! I love it.

**Mom** : Here are the instructions<sup>(2)</sup>. Can you read them out to me?

**Laila** : Right. First, we need some **wax**<sup>(3)</sup>.

**Mom** : Here it is. It's palm wax from Egyptian **palm trees**<sup>(4)</sup>. It makes really nice candles. How much do we need?

**Laila** : It says, "Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles."

**Mom** : Okay, there's about 500 grams here. That's enough. What's next?

**Laila** : We need some perfume oil.

**Mom** : Here. These are little bottles of **lemon o**<sup>(5)</sup>. Mmm ... they **smell lovely**<sup>(6)</sup>. How much do we need?

**Laila** : The instructions say, "**Squeeze**<sup>(7)</sup> in about 40 **drops**<sup>(8)</sup> of oil."

**Mom** : Fine. And we can take about 15 flowers and **press**<sup>(9)</sup> them on the tops of the candles.

**Laila** : Yes, good idea. Then we need one glass for each candle and one **wick**<sup>(10)</sup> – that's the little **cotton rope**<sup>(11)</sup> inside the candle.

### Arabic Meaning

١. زيت عطري
٢. تعليمات
٣. مادة الشمع
٤. أشجار النخيل
٥. زيت الليمون
٦. يصدر رائحة جميلة
٧. أعصر
٨. قطرات
٩. يضغط
١٠. فتيل
١١. حبل من القطن



## Taking care

**Mom** : Oh, yes. And we need some **popsicle sticks**<sup>(12)</sup> to hold the wicks up in the glasses.

**Laila** : So that's three glasses, three wicks, and three popsicle sticks, right?

Now, what do we need to do first?

**Mom** : Let's see... "Step one<sup>(13)</sup>: **Heat**<sup>(14)</sup> the wax to **boil**<sup>(15)</sup> it, then **stir**<sup>(16)</sup> it well."

١٢- عصي الايس كريم

١٣- الخطوة الأولى

١٤- وهم ننسحب

١٥- يديب

١٦- يقلب



**Tip** When you listen for quantities, remember to listen/look for numbers and words about measurements. For example, kilograms, grams, liters, milliliters, spoons, packages, cans.

نصيحة! عندما تستمع إلى الكميات، تذكر أن تستمع / تبحث عن أرقام وكلمات حول القياسات. على سبيل المثال، كيلوجرامات، جرامات، لترات، مليلترات، ملاعق، عبوات، علب.

## 2. You complete the instructions for making soap.

الآن أكمل التعليمات لصنع الصابون.

**add - bowl - heat - press - stir**

1. Put the ingredients for your soap in a ① **bowl**.
2. ② \_\_\_\_\_ the ingredients on a cooker.
3. Next, ③ \_\_\_\_\_ the ingredients with a wooden spoon.
4. Take the ingredients off the cooker.
5. When the ingredients are hard and cool, ④ \_\_\_\_\_ them into a soap container.
6. You can ⑤ \_\_\_\_\_ flower petals to make the soap look and smell lovely.



## هل كنت تعلم؟

When you brush your hair, it spreads the natural oils from your skin through your hair from the roots to the ends. This protects your hair from heat and dirt and makes it look shiny and healthy.

عندما تقوم بتمشيط شعرك، فذلك يقوم بتوزيع الزيوت الطبيعية من جلدك خلال شعرك من الجذور إلى الأطراف. وهذا يحمي شعرك من الحرارة والأتربة ويجعله يبدو لامعاً وصحياً.



# Activities



## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. .... are very important.

- ☐ a Paper      ☐ b Candles      ☐ c Pens      ☐ d Pencils

2. We use candles everywhere to get .....

- ☐ a water      ☐ b wood      ☐ c light      ☐ d paper

3. Some people use candles on special .....

- ☐ a occasions      ☐ b schools      ☐ c houses      ☐ d hospitals

4. Some people use candles to decorate their .....

- ☐ a shops      ☐ b homes      ☐ c rooms      ☐ d canals

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We need ..... to make candles.

- ☐ a oil      ☐ b wood      ☐ c paper      ☐ d wax

2. Put little sugar in the tea and ..... it.

- ☐ a cut      ☐ b stir      ☐ c drop      ☐ d throw

3. .... the wax to melt it.

- ☐ a Heat      ☐ b Press      ☐ c Squeeze      ☐ d Cool

4. A wick is a little cotton ..... inside the candle.

- ☐ a drop      ☐ b rope      ☐ c wood      ☐ d stick

5. Laila and her mom need some wax to make .....

- ☐ a cakes      ☐ b toys      ☐ c candles      ☐ d candies

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

popsicle - perfume - soap - candles - wax

Many years ago, our homes didn't have electricity. People used ..... instead. Candles are made from ..... We can make candles at home. You need some ..... oil, some wax, one wick and ..... sticks.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. sticks - We - popsicle - some - need.2. do - much - we - are - need - wax ?

(2023)

3. are - lemon oil - are - of - little bottles.4. makes - really - are - candles - nice.

(2023)

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what does Sally make

2. that s three glasses.

## 6 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إثنائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Making candles at home

# Lesson 2

## Part 1

# Ancient Egyptians ate well

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



paintings  
barley

رسومات / لوحات  
شعير

festivals  
herbs

احتفالات  
أعشاب

## Other words

The Nile floods  
garlic  
lentils  
cream  
wheat  
ducks

فيضانات النيل  
ثوم  
عدس  
قشطة  
قمح  
بط

goose (geese)  
figs  
salt  
taste better  
fruit drink

وزة (إوز)  
تين  
ملح  
ذو مذاق أفضل  
مشروب فاكهة

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

depend on يعتمد على  
dry يجفف  
preserve يحفظ

depend<sup>ed</sup> on  
dried  
preserv<sup>ed</sup>

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

take care of يعتني بـ  
grow يزرع  
keep يحافظ على

took care of  
grew  
kept

- barley** شعير a plant whose seeds we can use to make bread and other things
- herbs** أعشاب plants with a strong taste often used in cooking
- festival** احتفال a special occasion when people play music and eat nice food
- preserve** يحفظ add something to food to make it last for longer

Help your child find the meaning of words in a text.

ساعد طفلك في أن يجد معنى الكلمات في نص.





## Taking care



### When taking care of your body

من أين يأتي الطعام،

1. cream → cows
2. bread → wheat or barley
3. honey → bees
4. eggs → geese



### Study the following



What did the Ancient Egyptians eat and drink?

- ماذا كان يأكل ويشرب القدماء المصريين؟



Paintings from Ancient Egyptians show that people took care of their bodies and ate very well.

- تظهر رسومات المصريين القدماء أن الناس اعتنوا بأجسادهم وأكلوا بشكل جيد.



The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow a lot of fruit and vegetables.

- ساعدت مياه النيل الفلاحون المصريين في زراعة الكثير من الفاكهة والخضراوات.



At this time, the vegetables they could grow often depended on how much water came from the Nile floods.

- في هذه الفترة، اعتمدت زراعة الخضراوات على كمية المياه القادمة من فيضانات النيل.



People often used honey with bread and cream to make cakes.

- غالباً ما استخدم الناس العسل مع الخبز والقشطة لصناعة الكيك.



They also used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks

- استخدموا أيضاً القليل من البلح والتين لعمل عصائر من الفاكهة.



Some families also knew how to use spices and herbs to make their cooking taste better.

- عرف بعض العائلات كيفية استخدام التوابل والأعشاب لإضافة طعم أفضل لطعام الطهي.



They also knew how to preserve food.

- عرفوا أيضاً كيفية حفظ الطعام.



They dried fish or used salt to preserve it

- جففوا الأسماك أو استخدموا الملح لحفظ الطعام.



They used jars to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter

- استخدموا البرطمانات لحفظ الفاكهة والخضراوات لفصل الشتاء.



## use to make their cooking taste better?

استمع واقرأ عن الطعام في مصر القديمة. ما الذي استخدمه العائلات لجعل الطعام مذاق أفضل؟

استمع إلى النص،



Paintings from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time took care of their bodies and ate very well! So what did the Ancient Egyptians eat and drink?

The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow a lot of fruit and vegetables. At this time, the vegetables they could grow often depended on how much water came from the Nile floods. Ancient Egyptian farmers usually grew onions, garlic, lentils, and beans, and people cooked with all these vegetables. Farmers also grew wheat and barley. People used this to make bread and they ate a lot of this every day.

Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate a little meat, usually at festivals. They ate a few fish and birds like ducks, geese, and chickens. They also ate some eggs and cheese from cows or goats.

There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt, and that means there was honey! People often used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks.

Some families also knew how to use spices and herbs to make their cooking taste better, and they also knew how to preserve food. For example, they dried fish or used salt to preserve it, and used oil to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.

١. رسومات
٢. اعتنوا
٣. اعتمدوا
٤. فيضانات النيل
٥. الثوم
٦. من المحتمل
٧. التبن
٨. يخزن
٩. برطمانات

## 2 Look at the words in bold in the text. Match the words with their meanings:

انظر إلى الكلمات المحددة في النص. وصلها بمعانيها.

1. a plant whose seeds we can use to make bread and other things **barley**
2. plants with a strong taste often used in cooking
3. a special occasion when people play music and eat nice food
4. add something to food to make it last for longer

# Lesson 2

## Part 2

## Language focus

### Countable & Uncountable nouns

|                   |                     |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| Countable nouns   | أسماء يمكن عدّها    |
| Uncountable nouns | أسماء لا يمكن عدّها |

أولاً الأسماء التي يمكن عدّها (C) Countable nouns

- الأسماء التي تعد إما أن تأتي مفردة فيسبقها **a / an / one** أو تأتي جمع دون إضافة **a / an**

- الأسماء التي تعد إما أن تنتهي بالنهايات القادمة أو تجمع جمع شاذ.

s es ies ves جمع شاذ

- كيف نُكوّن الجمع من الأسماء المفردة التي تعد:

١- إما بإضافة **s** آخر الاسم: **book → books**

٢- أو بإضافة **es** آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بالحروف الموضحة ←:

bus → buses beach → beaches  
tomato → tomatoes glass → glasses

٣- أو بإضافة **y** إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف ( ) وكان قبله حرف ساكن حيث يحذف ( ) .

- أما إذا سبق حرف (y) حرف متحرك لا يحذف.

+ حرف ساكن (cand.) → ies → + حرف متحرك (bo.) → ys  
candles boys

٤- أو بإضافة **f / fe** حيث تحذف كما يلي: **kni → knives**



٥ - وهناك أسماء شاذة لا تتبع القاعدة ولها جمع خاص بها تحفظ كما هي:

|       |   |          |       |   |       |
|-------|---|----------|-------|---|-------|
| mouse | → | mice     | ox    | → | oxen  |
| man   | → | men      | woman | → | women |
| child | → | children | tooth | → | teeth |
| goose | → | geese    |       |   |       |

### ثانيًا: الأسماء التي لا تعد (Uncountable nouns (U)

- الأسماء التي لا تعد تعامل معاملة المفرد ومن أمثلتها كل المشروبات وبعض الأطعمة مثل:

water / sugar / milk / chocolate / grass / oil / honey / soup / bread / money /  
homework / time / traffic / juice / meat / fish

### 1. How many & How much

• نستخدم (كم عدد...? How many) للسؤال عن الأسماء التي تعد، مثل أوراق الشجر أو الليمون.

• يمكننا الرد على السؤال بـ (How many?) برقم (a an five twelve) أو كمية تقريبية يسبقها (some / a few / a lot).

Ex: How many lemons do we need for the lemonade?

- We need five lemons.

- We need a few lemons.

ملحوظة: دائما يأتي بعد How many اسم يُعد جمع كما في المثال السابق.

• نستخدم كم كمه...? How much للسؤال عن الأسماء التي لا تعد، مثل الشاي أو السكر.

• لا يمكننا الرد على هذا السؤال إلا بكمية تقريبية تسبقها (some / a little / a lot).

Ex: How much oil do we need?

- We need a little oil.

### 2. some / any:

- نستخدم كلمة some بمعنى (بعض) في الجملة المثبتة. ويأتي بعد some الأسماء المعدودة والأسماء الغير معدودة.

Ex: There are some girls from Luxor in my class.

- ونستخدم any بمعنى (أي) في الجملة المنفية والسؤال. ويأتي بعد any الأسماء المعدودة والأسماء الغير معدودة.

Ex: There aren't any tigers in Egypt.

Ex: Are there any lemons?



## Taking care

### 3. A lot of / A few / A little:

#### • A lot of:

⊙ نستخدم **a lot of** بمعنى "كثيرا من" أمام الأسماء التي تعد (الجمع) والأسماء التي لا تعد:

Ex There are **a lot of students** in my class. (اسم جمع)

Ex: I like eating **a lot of chocolate**. (اسم لا يعد)

#### • A few

⊙ نستخدم **a few** بمعنى "قليل من" أمام الأسماء التي تعد (الجمع) فقط:

Ex: There are **a few students** in my class.

#### • A little

⊙ نستخدم **a little** بمعنى "قليل من" أمام الأسماء التي لا تعد:

Ex: There is **a little sugar** in my tea.

### 4. There is & There are:

#### • There is / isn't لا يوجد للمفرد يوجد

⊙ نستخدم **there is / isn't** مع الأسماء التي تعد المفردة والأسماء التي لا تعد.

Ex: There is **a car** in front of my house. (كلمة مفرد)

Ex: There is **sugar** in my tea. (كلمة لا تعد)

#### • There are / aren't لا يوجد للجمع يوجد

⊙ نستخدم **there are / aren't** مع الأسماء التي تعد (للجمع).

• There are **lemons** in the fridge.

## Practice



Use the information in the box to complete the sentences from the text. Then read and check:

استخدم المصطلحات من النص لتكمل الجمل:

**a few - a little - a lot of - some**

1. The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow fruit and vegetables.
2. Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate ..... meat, usually at festivals.

3. They also ate ..... eggs and cheese from cows or goats.  
 4. They also used ..... dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks.



Complete the dialogue with the words in the box.

انظر إلى الكلمات الموجودة في القائمة. اكتب C (يعد) أو U (لا يعد)

- |                         |                  |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| 1. sugar ..... <b>U</b> | 2. mango .....   |
| 3. traffic              | 4. store .....   |
| 5. oil .....            | 6. student ..... |
| 7. juice                | 8. money .....   |
| 9. ticket .....         | 10. homework     |
| 11. cow                 | 12. honey        |



Complete the dialogue with How much / How many

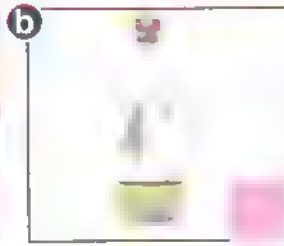
أكمل المحادثة بكم كمية؟ أو كم عدد؟

1. **Hani** : How much milk do you want in your coffee, Grandma?  
**Grandma** : Just a little milk, thanks Hani.
2. **Fareeda** : ..... students are there in your English class, Dalia?  
**Dalia** : There are about forty, I think.
3. **Sherif** : ..... math problems did you do yesterday?  
**Karim** : Just a few. They were difficult.
4. **Rana** : I'm going to the market now. .... tomatoes do we need?  
**Ayman** : .....  
 Please get a kilo of tomatoes and some fruit.
5. **Hana** : ..... honey do we do we have, Ayman?  
**Ayman** : We have a lot. See the jar on the left.

4

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

انظر إلى الصور ، أكمل الجمل بـ / a lot of / a little / a few



1. There's a lot of traffic.
2. There's a little oil.
3. There are many leaves.
4. There are many fish.

5

Circle the correct answer:

ضع دائرة على الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. Please hurry. We don't have a lot of / a few time.
2. Can I have a little / a few sugar in my coffee, please?
3. There isn't some / any bread. Can you buy some / a few?
4. There are a few / a little lemons in the fridge, so we don't need any more.
5. How many / much candles does 450 grams of wax make?
6. How many / much cooking oil do I need to put in the pan?

6

Complete the sentences with a few - a little - a lot of - an - half a cup

أكمل الجزء الأول من وصفة الطعام بالتعبيرات من القائمة :

a few - a little - a lot of - an - half a cup

## How to make chocolate chip cookies

(make 12 cookies)

Take ① a cup of flour and add ② a little salt. Mix with 120 grams of butter and 150 grams of sugar. Add ③ one egg and ④ ten drops of vanilla essence<sup>(1)</sup>. Cut 150 grams of dark chocolate<sup>(2)</sup> into small pieces. Stir the chocolate pieces into the mixture<sup>(3)</sup>. Then ...

1. خلاصة الفانيليا  
2. شيكولاتة غامقة  
3. خليط



# Activities



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. People used ..... and wheat to make bread.

- ☐ a wood      ☐ b paper      ☐ c barley      ☐ d meat

2. .... are plants with a strong taste often used in cooking.

- ☐ a Hair      ☐ b Herbs      ☐ c Bees      ☐ d Geese

3. "....." means adding something to food to make it last for longer.

- ☐ a Throw      ☐ b Preserve      ☐ c Play      ☐ d Draw

4. A ..... is a special occasion when people play music and eat nice food.

- ☐ a barley      ☐ b festival      ☐ c goose      ☐ d painting

5. Ancient Egyptians used ..... to preserve food.

(2021)

- ☐ a candles      ☐ b salt      ☐ c papers      ☐ d metals

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**herbs - lost - paintings - barley - preserve**

We know many things about Ancient Egyptians from ..... They used wheat and ..... to make bread. They knew how to use ..... to make food taste better. They also knew how to ..... food.

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. plants - Herbs - are - a strong - taste - with.

2. Egyptians - bread - ..... - used - to make - wheat.

3. knew - also - ..... - preserve - food - how to.





## Taking care

4. dried - it - They - fish - preserve - to.

5. much - How - do - milk - you - want - your coffee - in?

6. did - What - the - Ancient - drink - Egyptians?

### 4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I bought ..... **(a little)** books yesterday. (2023)

2. How ..... **(much)** lemons do we need today? (2023)

3. .... **(How many)** honey do we have, Ayman? (2023)

4. There aren't ..... **(some)** tigers in Egypt. (2023)

5. We use a ..... **(few)** butter to cook.

6. How ..... **(many)** rice do you need?

7. Do you have ..... **(some)** pens?

8. The streets are empty. There's ..... **(a few)** traffic.

9. How ..... **(much)** cups of coffee do you drink?

10. There ..... **(aren't)** any sugar in the kitchen.

### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. farmers grew wheat and barley

2. how many candles do you want

# Lesson 3

## Part 1

## Reading

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



|            |                    |        |                      |
|------------|--------------------|--------|----------------------|
| astonished | مدهش               | throne | عرش (الملك / الملكة) |
| caretaker  | مقدم الرعاية       | crown  | تاج                  |
| scepter    | صولجان (عصا الملك) | dust   | غبار                 |

### Other words

### Other words



|                |                  |             |             |
|----------------|------------------|-------------|-------------|
| king           | ملك              | statue      | تمثال       |
| queen          | ملكة             | dining room | حجرة الطعام |
| palace         | قصر              | curtains    | ستائر       |
| royal children | الأطفال الملكيين | carpet      | سجادة       |
| prince         | أمير             | furniture   | أثاث        |
| princess       | أميرة            | otherwise   | والا        |
| paintings      | لوحات            |             |             |

### Adjectives

|          |                |          |              |
|----------|----------------|----------|--------------|
| missing  | مفقود          | colorful | كثير الألوان |
| precious | ثمين / ذو قيمة | empty    | فارغ         |
| strange  | غريب           | dirty    | متسخ         |

### Adverbs

### الظروف

|             |               |         |        |
|-------------|---------------|---------|--------|
| carefully   | بعناية / بحرص | quickly | بسرعة  |
| dangerously | بشكل خطير     | simply  | ببساطة |
| finally     | أخيرًا        | usually | عادةً  |



### Phrases and Prepositions

### عبارات وحروف جر

|              |             |             |          |
|--------------|-------------|-------------|----------|
| full         | مليء بـ     | once        | في الحال |
| wash ... off | يفسل ... من | have a bath | يستحم    |





## Taking care

### caretaker (n)

القائم بالرعاية (اسم)

people who look after and clean a building....

### leaning

مستند / متكئ على

moving the top part of the body in a particular direction

### astonished

مندهش

very surprised

### dust

تراب

dry dirt in the form of powder that covers surfaces

## Conjugation of verbs



### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present

مضارع

#### Past

ماضٍ

#### Present

مضارع

#### Past

ماضٍ

notice

يلاحظ

noticed

understand

يفهم

understood

pick up

يلتقط

picked up

hear

يسمع

heard

knock on

يطرق / يدق

knocked on

come

يأتي

came

damage

يتلف

damaged

lean

يستند على

leaned / leant

## Study the following

- 1 Peter lives in a big palace. - يعيش بيتر في قصر كبير.
- 2 The palace is old and no one lives there now. - القصر قديم ولا أحد يعيش فيه الآن.
- 3 The rooms are full of interesting and precious things. - الغرف مليئة بالأشياء الثمينة والمثيرة للاهتمام.
- 4 Peter notices something strange about the big painting. - لاحظ بيتر شيئاً غريباً في اللوحة الكبيرة.
- 5 The king's place in the painting is empty. - مكان الملك في اللوحة فارغ.
- 6 Peter is surprised and looks carefully at the painting. - يتفاجأ بيتر وينظر بعناية إلى اللوحة.
- 7 He can see a crown and a scepter, but not the king. - يمكنه رؤية التاج والسوطجان، لكن ليس الملك.

8 Peter knows he must find the missing king at once

- عرف بيتر أنه يجب أن يجد الملك المفقود في الحال.

9 He hears singing and knocks on the door.

- سمع الغناء وطرق الباب.

10 I spend years sitting in that painting.

- قضيت سنوات طويلة جالس في هذه اللوحة.

11 In the future, please clean the paintings in the palace!

- من فضلك نظف اللوحات في القصر في المستقبل!

12 He runs back to the painting to pick up his scepter

- جرى إلى اللوحة ليلتقط صولجانه.

1 Listen and read! Why does the king lose his painting?

استمع واقراء. لماذا ترك الملك لوحته؟

Transcript

استمع إلى النص:



## The Missing King

- Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers<sup>(1)</sup>. The palace is old and no one lives there now. Peter likes to explore the rooms. They are full of interesting and precious things – old paintings, statues, carpets, and furniture.
- One day, Peter notices something strange about the big painting in the dining room. Usually, this colorful painting shows one of the old kings sitting on the throne with a crown<sup>(2)</sup> on his head and a long scepter<sup>(3)</sup> in his hand. The queen and the royal children – the prince and the princess – are next to him. But today, the king's place in the painting is empty: he is missing!
- Peter is surprised and looks carefully at the painting again. He can see the crown and scepter, but not the king. Also, the scepter is leaning<sup>(4)</sup> dangerously over the princess's head. Peter knows he must find the king at once!
- He goes through all of the rooms in the palace. He looks behind doors and curtains. Finally, he comes to the royal bathroom. He hears singing and knocks

١. مقدمو، الزعاية

٢. تاج

٣. صولجان

٤. يميل / يتكئ على



on the door. "Who is it?" says the king. "Please be quiet! I'm enjoying a hot bath!" Peter is **astounded**<sup>(5)</sup>. When the king comes out, he says to him, "I spend years sitting in that painting and no one ever comes to wash the **dust**<sup>(6)</sup> off me. Dust damages<sup>(7)</sup> the painting, so I simply had to have a **bath**<sup>(8)</sup>."

5. Peter understands but explains to the king that his scepter is about to fall on the princess. "Thank you, my boy," the king says. "I will hurry back. But in the future, please clean the paintings in the palace. **Otherwise**<sup>(9)</sup>, they'll be damaged forever!" and he runs back to the painting to **pick up**<sup>(10)</sup> the scepter.
6. Peter now cleans all the paintings in the palace so that they aren't damaged – and so that no one has to leave their painting to have a good bath!

٥. مذهش

٦. تراب

٧. يدمر

٨. حمام/دُش

٩. والا

١٠. يلمص



### Tip!

You can use pictures in a story to help you understand new words. You can also look at the words around an unknown word in a text to help you understand it. For example, is there an article (a / an/ the) before the word, or an adjective? If there is, it's a noun. You can then look at the sentences around it and think what the noun could mean in the context.

يمكنك استخدام الصور في قصة لمساعدتك في فهم الكلمات الجديدة. يمكنك أيضًا إلقاء نظرة على الكلمات الموجودة حول كلمة غير معروفة في النص لمساعدتك على فهمها. على سبيل المثال، هل هناك أداة (a / an/ the) قبل الكلمة، أو صفة؟ إذا كان هناك، فهو اسم. يمكنك بعد ذلك إلقاء نظرة على الجمل قبل وبعد الاسم والتفكير في ما يمكن أن يعنيه الاسم في السياق.

# Lesson 3

## Part 2

## Clil: Social studies

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات،



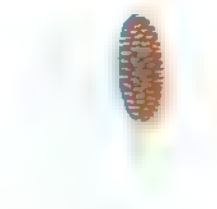
### Ancient Egyptian traditions



soap  
صابون



shampoo  
شامبو



hairbrush  
فرشاة شعر



toothpaste  
معجون أسنان



toothbrush  
فرشاة أسنان



cream  
كريم



perfume  
عطر



breath mints  
معطر الفم بالنعناع

|          |                                  |          |             |
|----------|----------------------------------|----------|-------------|
| stick    | عصا                              | cinnamon | نبات القرفة |
| incense  | بخور                             | powder   | مسحوق       |
| cardamom | الحبهان / الهيل (نوع من التوابل) |          |             |

### Adjectives

|           |              |         |             |
|-----------|--------------|---------|-------------|
| popular   | شائع         | cheap   | رخيص        |
| expensive | غالي الثمن   | ancient | قديم        |
| common    | معروف / شائع | fresh   | منعش / طازج |





## Other words

## كلمات أخرى



|                  |                 |                |                              |
|------------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------------------|
| personal care    | العناية الشخصية | rosemary       | إكليل الجبل (نوع من الأعشاب) |
| herbs and spices | أعشاب وتوابل    | papyrus        | ورق بردي                     |
| recipe           | وصفة            | pine seeds     | بذور الصنوبر                 |
| cone shape       | شكل مخروطي      | products       | منتجات                       |
| iris flowers     | زهور السوسن     | rock salt      | الملح الصخري                 |
| mint candies     | حلوى النعناع    | square candies | حلوى مربعة                   |
| melon            | الشمام          |                |                              |

## Conjugation of verbs

## تحويل الأفعال

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع   | Past ماضٍ | Present مضارع      | Past ماضٍ |
|-----------------|-----------|--------------------|-----------|
| rub يدلك / يفرك | rubbed    | wear يرتدي         | wore      |
| cover يغطي      | covered   | leave يترك / يغادر | left      |
| mix يخلط        | mixed     |                    |           |

## Study the following

- Many of the products we use today for personal care were first used in Ancient Egypt.  
العديد من المنتجات التي نستخدمها اليوم للعناية الشخصية تم استخدامها لأول مرة في مصر القديمة.
- The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes.  
أحب قدماء المصريين العطور القوية.
- The perfume was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients.  
كان العطر باهظ الثمن لأنه يحتوي على الكثير من المكونات.
- Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals.  
وكانت العطور الأرخص ثمنًا تصنع من الزهور والأعشاب وبعض أنواع المعادن.
- They pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense.  
قاموا بضغط المكونات الجافة في شكل مخروطي لصنع البخور.
- To clean their teeth, Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush.  
استخدم قدماء المصريين نوعًا من فرشاة الأسنان لتنظيف أسنانهم.
- They put this dry powder directly onto their teeth.  
وضعوا هذا المسحوق الجاف مباشرة على أسنانهم.
- To keep their mouths fresh all day, the Ancient Egyptians made mint candies.  
صنع المصريون القدماء حلوى النعناع للحفاظ على أفواههم منعشة طوال اليوم.
- They heated the mixture over a fire, left it to cool, and cut it into small square candies.  
قاموا بتسخين الخليط على النار، وتركوه ليبرد، وقطعوه إلى حلوى مربعة صغيرة.



## 2) Read the text and find the things they used for personal care in the past.

اقرأ النص. أی الاشياء من التمرین ( ١ ) مذكورة به؟

### PERSONAL CARE<sup>(1)</sup> IN THE PAST

Many of the **products**<sup>(2)</sup> we use today for personal care were first used in Ancient Egypt!

#### Perfumes

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called kapet. It was **expensive**<sup>(3)</sup> because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like **cardamom**<sup>(4)</sup> and **cinnamon**<sup>(5)</sup>.

Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of **minerals**<sup>(6)</sup>, then mixed with oil to make a cream. Or they pressed the dry ingredients into a **cone shape**<sup>(7)</sup> to make **incense**<sup>(8)</sup>. In Ancient Egyptian paintings you can often see men and women wearing these perfume cones on their heads at **festivals**<sup>(9)</sup>!

#### Toothpaste

To clean their teeth, Ancient Egyptians used a type of **toothbrush**<sup>(10)</sup> – a stick with small pieces of **papyrus**<sup>(11)</sup> **tied**<sup>(12)</sup> to it at one end. The ingredients of their **toothpaste**<sup>(13)</sup> were a mint, **rock salt**<sup>(14)</sup>, pepper, and **dried flowers**<sup>(15)</sup>. They put this dry **powder**<sup>(16)</sup> **directly**<sup>(17)</sup> onto their teeth and **rubbed**<sup>(18)</sup> it with their toothbrushes.

#### Breath Mints

To keep their mouths **fresh**<sup>(19)</sup> all day, the Ancient Egyptians made **mint candies**<sup>(20)</sup>. They mixed cinnamon, **melon**<sup>(21)</sup>, **pine seeds**<sup>(22)</sup>, and some nuts together with honey. Then they heated the mixture over a fire, left it to cool, and cut it into small **square candies**<sup>(23)</sup>.

#### Arabic Meaning

- ١- العناية الشخصية
- ٢- منتجات
- ٣- عالي
- ٤- الجيها
- ٥- نبات الفرقة
- ٦- معادن
- ٧ شكل مخروطي
- ٨- بخور
- ٩- مهرجانات
- ١٠- فريشة اسنان
- ١١- ورق بردي
- ١٢- ربط
- ١٣- معجون اسنان
- ١٤- الملح الصخري
- ١٥- رهور السوسن المحممة
- ١٦- مسحوق
- ١٧- مباشرة
- ١٨- يدلك / يفرك
- ١٩- متعش
- ٢٠- حلوى النعناع
- ٢١- شمام
- ٢٢- بذور الصوبر
- ٢٣- حلوى مربعة

## 3) Match the words with their meanings.

ضع الكلمات في القائمة في التصنيف الصحيح في الجدول. هل يمكن اضافة كلمات اخرى؟ اي منها يعد او لا يعد؟

cardamom - cinnamon - copper - lemon - melon - mint  
orange - pepper - rosemary - salt

| Fruit | Herbs | Spices | Minerals |
|-------|-------|--------|----------|
|       |       |        |          |
|       |       |        |          |
|       |       |        |          |



# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The king is sitting on his ..... next to the queen. (2022)  
☐ a throne      ☐ b bed      ☐ c scepter      ☐ d seat
2. Kings live in a .....  
☐ a garden      ☐ b palace      ☐ c school      ☐ d shop
3. I need wash my hair. There is no ..... (2023)  
☐ a sugar      ☐ b toothpaste      ☐ c shampoo      ☐ d cream
4. A king wears a ..... on his head.  
☐ a crown      ☐ b carpet      ☐ c throne      ☐ d scepter
5. We use ..... to wash our face.  
☐ a soup      ☐ b toothbrush      ☐ c soap      ☐ d perfume
6. We use a ..... to brush our teeth.  
☐ a lemon      ☐ b cone      ☐ c pen      ☐ d toothbrush

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**personal - rosemary - ingredients - expensive - perfume**

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular .....  
was called kapet. It was ..... because it had a lot of .....  
some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like  
..... and mint.

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. Egyptian - candies - mint - Ancient - made. (2023)
2. perfumes - from - ..... - flowers - were made.





3. Egyptians - Ancient - candies - made - mint.

4. is leaning - princess's -            - head - over - the.

5. are - things -            - interesting - full of - and precious.



#### Punctuate the following:

صغ علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. personal care products were in Ancient Egypt

2. Where does peter find the king



#### Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Personal care in Ancient Egypt

perfumes - toothbrushes

# Lesson 48.5

## Writing & Project

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



salt dough

عجينة من الملح

recipe

وصفة

ingredients

مكونات

secret

سر

method

طريقة

preparation time

وقت التحضير

baking tray

صينية الخبز

combination

مزيج / توليفة

### Other words

### Other words



plain flour

دقيق لجميع الأغراض

the oven

الفرن

low temperature

درجة حرارة منخفضة

mixture

المخلوط

flat surface

سطح مستو

shape

شكل

items

الأصناف

3D objects

أشياء ثلاثية الأبعاد

secret

سري / سر

cloth

قماش

souks

الأسواق

souvenirs

هدايا تذكارية

besides

بالإضافة إلى

delicious dishes

أطباق لذيذة

tourists

سائحون

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

#### أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

heat

يسخن

heated

form

يشكل

formed

bake

يخبز

baked

chop

يقطع

chopped

#### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

put

يضع

put

leave

يترك

left

cut out

يقطع

cut out



## Study the following

- 1 Heat the oven on a low temperature.

- سخن الفرن على درجة حرارة منخفضة

- 2 Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl

اخلط الدقيق والملح في إناء كبير.

- 3 Add a little water then a little more, and stir the mixture until it starts to form a ball.

- أضف قليل من الماء ثم كمية أكثر وقلب الخليط حتى يبدأ في تكوين كرة.

- 4 Put the ball of dough on a flat surface and work it into the shape you want

- ضع الكرة من العجينة على سطح مستو وشكلها حسب ما تريد.

- 5 Put your finished items on a baking tray.

- ضع الأشياء التي انتهت منها في صينية الخبز.

- 6 Leave the items to cool, then paint them.

اترك الأشياء لتبرد ثم لونها.

- 7 Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country.

تشتهر مصر بتوابلها التي تستخدم في الطبخ المنزلي والمطاعم في جميع أنحاء البلاد.

- 8 We can also use them in perfume, medicine, and to color cloth

- نستطيع استخدامها أيضًا في صنع العطور والأدوية وتلوين القماش.

- 9 They also make great souvenirs and beautifully packaged for tourists visiting spice stores and souks.

يعتبروا كهدايا تذكارية رائعة ويتم تغليفهم بطريقة جميلة للسياح الذين يزورون متاجر التوابل

والأسواق.





اقرأ الوصفة وأضف العنوايين في القائمة إلى الوصفة.

## Ingredients - Method - preparation time

Salt dough recipe<sup>(1)</sup>

(Like)

## 1. Preparation time

10 minutes + 3 hours for cooking

## 2. Ingredients

1 cup of plain flour (about 250g)

 $\frac{1}{2}$  a cup of salt (about 125g) $\frac{1}{2}$  a cup of water (about 125ml)

## 3. Method

1 Heat the oven on a low temperature<sup>(2)</sup>.

Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. Add a

little water, then a little more, and stir the mixture<sup>(3)</sup> until it starts to form a ball.Put the ball of dough on a flat surface<sup>(4)</sup> and work it into the shape you want. You can roll it flat and cut out shapes, numbers, or letters, or use the dough to make 3D objects.4. Put your finished items on a baking tray<sup>(5)</sup> and bake in the oven for 3 hours until it is hard<sup>(6)</sup>.5. Leave the items<sup>(7)</sup> to cool, then paint them.

١. وصفة عجينة الملح
٢. درجة حرارة
٣. الخليط
٤. سطح مستو
٥. صينية الخبز
٦. صلب
٧. الأشياء



أوجد هذه الأرقام في النص. اكتب المكونات.

1. 125 milliliters:  $\frac{1}{2}$  a cup

2. 250 grams: . . . . .

3. 125 grams: . . . . .



Match the representations (1-10) with the phrases.

صل التعبيرات بوظيفتها في وصفة الطعام.



Heat the oven

1 cup of flour

10 minutes.



a quantity of an ingredient

the time it takes to make it.

an instruction about how to make it

# Project

Read the text. What do we use spices for?

اقرأ النص في أي شيء نستخدم التوابل؟

## Tapescript

## نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



### Egyptian flavors !

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a **special** ingredient in many recipes. But what else can we make with spices besides delicious dishes? We can also use them to make perfume and **medicine**, and to color **cloth**. They also make great **souvenirs**, and beautifully **package** for tourists visiting spice **stores**<sup>(10)</sup> and souks<sup>(11)</sup>.

#### Arabic Meaning

١. النكهات المصرية
٢. شهير بـ
٣. بهارات / توابل
٤. توليفة
٥. سر
٦. الدواء
٧. قماش
٨. هدايا تذكارية
٩. تعبأ
١٠. المتاجر
١١. الأسواق



# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Tourists buy ..... when they visit Egypt. (2022) اكتب الإجابة  
a houses      b souvenirs      c cars      d cats
2. I put the dough on a baking ..... in the oven. (2022) اكتب الإجابة  
a ball      b tray      c paper      d book
3. Can you tell me the ..... to make chocolate cake? (2023)  
a numbers      b homework      c ingredients      d lessons
4. Mix the flour and salt in a large .....  
a ball      b bowl      c roll      d method

## 2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**flat - stir - flour - bowl - hours**

This is salt dough recipe. Heat the oven on a low temperature. Mix the ..... and salt in a large ..... Add a little water, then a little more and ..... the mixture until it starts to form a ball. Put the ball of dough on a ..... surface and work it into the shape you want.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: (2023) اكتب الإجابة

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. And we don't only use spices to cook food, we also use them in perfume, medicine, and to color cloth. Spices are sold in stores, on the streets, and in the souks. Fresh, colorful and beautifully packaged spices are one of the favorite **souvenirs** that tourists buy when they visit Egypt.

**A- Choose the correct answer:**

1. The main idea of the text is about .....  
a Egyptian restaurants      b Egyptian stores  
c Egyptian spices      d Egyptian streets



Help your child deal with such questions. يساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

2. The underlined word "souvenirs" refers to .....

- ☐ a gifts                      ☐ b herbs                      ☐ c food                      ☐ d stores

3. We can buy spices from .....

- ☐ a library                      ☐ b stores                      ☐ c school                      ☐ d bank

**B- Answer the following questions:**

4. What is Egypt famous for?

5. Write two uses of the Egyptian spices.

**4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. for - do - What - use - spices - we? .....
2. is - for - spices - Egypt - famous - its. ....
3. a low - the - oven - Heat - temperature - on. ....
4. medicine -            - to make - use them - perfume - and. ....

**5 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. Many tourists love egyptian flavors .....
2. What things does hisham need to make soap .....

**6 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

**Making salt dough**

**Guiding phrases**

**heat - the oven - baking tray**

# Review



## Key vocabulary



perfume oil  
زيت عطري



wax  
مادة الشمع



drop  
قطرة



wick  
فتيل (الشمعة)



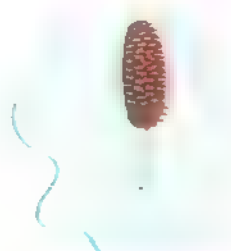
popsicle sticks  
عصي الايس كريم



soap  
صابون



شامبو



فرشاة شعر



معجون أسنان



toothbrush  
فرشاة أسنان



cream  
كريم



perfume  
عطر



breath mints  
معطر الفم بالنعناع

## Important verbs أفعال هامة



heat (ed)  
يسخن



squeeze (d)  
يعصر



press (ed)  
يضغط



stir (red)  
يقلب

## Other words كلمات أخرى

|                  |                  |                |                    |
|------------------|------------------|----------------|--------------------|
| candle           | شمعة             | personal care  | العناية الشخصية    |
| ingredients      | مكونات           | crown          | تاج                |
| royal children   | الأطفال الملكيين | instructions   | تعليمات            |
| paintings        | لوحات / رسومات   | cinnamon       | نبات القرفة        |
| herbs and spices | أعشاب وتوابل     | square candies | حلوى مربعة         |
| incense          | بخور             | souvenirs      | هدايا تذكارية      |
| recipe           | وصفة             | scepter        | صولجان (عصا الملك) |
| flavors          | النكهات          | throne         | عرش                |
| combination      | مزيج / توليفة    | caretaker      | مقدم الرعاية       |
| astonished       | مندهش            | curtains       | ستائر              |



Taking care

## Conjugation of verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present مضارع   | Past ماضٍ | Present مضارع          | Past ماضٍ       |
|-----------------|-----------|------------------------|-----------------|
| add يضيف        | added     | smell يشم/ يصدر رائحة  | smelt / smelled |
| notice يلاحظ    | noticed   | hold up يمسك لأعلى     | held up         |
| knock يطرق/ يدق | knocked   | read out يقرأ بصوت عال | read out        |
|                 |           | lean يستند على / يميل  | leant / leaned  |



## أسماء

• تنقسم الأسماء إلى:

|                   |                     |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| Countable nouns   | أسماء يمكن عدّها    |
| Uncountable nouns | أسماء لا يمكن عدّها |

### أولاً: الأسماء التي يمكن عدّها (Countable nouns (C))

- الأسماء التي تعد إما أن تأتي مفردة فيسبقها **a** أو تأتي جمع دون إضافة **an**.
- الأسماء التي تعد إما أن تنتهي بالنهايات القادمة أو تجمع جمع شاذ.



- كيف نكون الجمع من الأسماء المفردة التي تعد:

١- إما بإضافة **s** آخر الاسم: book - books

٢- أو بإضافة **es** آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بالحروف الموضحة ←

bus → buses beach → beaches

٣- أو بإضافة **y** إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف (y) وكان قبله حرف ساكن حيث يحذف (y).

- أما إذا سبق حرف (y) حرف متحرك لا يحذف.



٤- أو بإضافة آخر الاسم إذا انتهى بـ **f / fe** حيث تحذف كما يلي: **kni → kni**

٥- وهناك أسماء شاذة لا تتبع القاعدة ولها جمع خاص بها تحفظ كما هي:

**man → men**      **child → children**

### ثانيًا الأسماء التي لا تعد (Uncountable nouns (U)

- الأسماء التي لا تعد تعامل معاملة المفرد ومن أمثلتها كل المشروبات وبعض الأطعمة مثل:

**water sugar milk chocolate / grass oil honey soup bread money / homework / time / traffic / juice**

#### How many? كم للعدد...

- للسؤال عن الأسماء التي تعد:

- **How many oranges** do you need?

- I need **two** oranges.

- I need a **few** oranges.

- يمكن الرد على سؤال **How many**: برقم أو كمية

تقريبية يسبقها (**some / a few / a lot**)

**some** بعض

- تأتي مع الجملة المثبتة وقبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد:

- There are **some** boys in the park.

**A little** قليل من

- تأتي أمام الأسماء التي لا تعد فقط:

- There is **a little** tea in the kitchen.

**A lot of** كثيرًا من

- There are a lot of books in my room.

- I like eating a lot of honey.

#### How much? كم للكمية...

- للسؤال عن الأسماء التي لا تعد:

- **How much sugar** do you have?

- I have **a little** sugar.

- لا يمكن الرد على سؤال **How much**: إلا بكمية

تقريبية تسبقها: (**some / a little / a lot**)

**any** أي

- تأتي مع الجملة المنفية والسؤال وقبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد:

- There aren't **any** lemons.

- Is there **any** milkshake?

**A few** قليل من

- تأتي أمام الأسماء التي تعد (الجمع) فقط:

- There are **a few** people in the street.

- تأتي أمام الأسماء التي تعد (الجمع) والأسماء التي لا تعد:



## Answers to paragraphs / إجابات الفقرات

### Making candles at home

- 1 We can make candles at home. First, we need some wax. We need some perfume oil. We need one glass and a wick for each candle. We need some popsicle sticks, too. We use them to hold the wicks up.

### Lesson 3

### Personal care in Ancient Egypt

- 2 The Ancient Egyptians used products for personal care. They loved strong perfumes. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers. Others were made from herbs. They used toothbrushes to clean their teeth. They are different from ours today.

### Lesson 101

### Making salt dough

- 3 Most children like making salt dough. They need water, flour and salt. They stir the mixture to form a ball. Then, they cut out the dough into shapes, numbers or letters. After that, they put the finished items on a baking tray in the oven for three hours until it is hard.

### Al Azhar test

### Herbs and spices

- 4 Herbs and spices are important in our life. Salt and pepper are kinds of spices we use to cook food. We can drink herbs like mint and rosemary because they are healthy for our bodies. Herbs and spices were famous in Ancient Egypt, too. The Ancient Egyptians used them in making perfumes.

### Activity - Unit 6

### Egyptian spices

- 5 Egypt is famous for its spices. The Egyptians use them in cooking. Restaurants use them, too. They don't only use spices to cook food. They also use them in perfume, medicine, and color cloth. Spices are sold in stores, on the streets, and in the souks.

# Al-Azhar Test

الاختبار الخاص بالازهر الشريف

## 1 Read and complete the dialog:

أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

a little - much - do - too - food

A : Do you like coffee with milk?

B : Yes, I ① \_\_\_\_\_.

A : How ② \_\_\_\_\_ milk do you want in your coffee?

B : Just ③ \_\_\_\_\_ milk.

A : What's your favorite ④ \_\_\_\_\_ ?

B : I like koshari.

A : I like it, ⑤ \_\_\_\_\_.

## 2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

|   |       |         |          |            |      |
|---|-------|---------|----------|------------|------|
| 1 | press | stir    | cotton   | heat       | ---  |
| 2 | salt  | sugar   | flour    | festival   | --   |
| 3 | wheat | lentils | probably | dates      | ---  |
| 4 | soap  | shampoo | queen    | toothpaste | ---- |
| 5 | lemon | melon   | pen      | orange     | ---  |

## 3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

(2020)

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Egypt is country in North Africa. Most of Egypt is desert. Egypt has the longest river in the world, The Nile. Tourists come to visit Egypt from all over the world. They come to enjoy their sunny weather. They go to Luxor and Aswan to see the great monuments. They can also visit the Pyramids and Sphinx in Giza. They can take a lot of photos of the Pyramids. Hurghada is a famous town for tourists. They can do many activities there. They can swim and go diving in the sea. They can relax on the beach.

### A. Answer the following questions:

1. What can tourists do in Hurghada?



2. Why do tourists go to Aswan and Luxor?

3. What's the famous town for tourists?

### B. Choose the correct answer:

4. Egypt is a country in \_\_\_\_\_ Africa. (North - East - West )

5. Egypt has the longest \_\_\_\_\_ in the world. (river - sea - lake )

### D- Vocabulary and Structure

#### 4 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. How \_\_\_\_\_ lemons do we need for the lemonade?

- ☐ a much                      ☐ b many                      ☐ c long                      ☐ d tall

2. We need some perfume \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a water                      ☐ b gas                      ☐ c oil                      ☐ d wood

3. There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ honey left in the jar.

- ☐ a some                      ☐ b any                      ☐ c a lot                      ☐ d lot

4. To clean their teeth, Ancient Egyptians used a type of \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a toothbrush                      ☐ b hairbrush                      ☐ c shampoo                      ☐ d pen

5. How \_\_\_\_\_ juice did you drink?

- ☐ a many                      ☐ b long                      ☐ c much                      ☐ d far

6. We make \_\_\_\_\_ from wheat.

- ☐ a juice                      ☐ b meat                      ☐ c bread                      ☐ d fridge

7. My mom uses special \_\_\_\_\_ to make her cooking taste good.

- ☐ a planes                      ☐ b herbs                      ☐ c pens                      ☐ d bikes

8. The king put his \_\_\_\_\_ on his head.

- ☐ a crown                      ☐ b shirt                      ☐ c statue                      ☐ d mobile

9. The royal ring is \_\_\_\_\_. It costs a lot of money.

- ☐ a broken                      ☐ b precious                      ☐ c weak                      ☐ d cheap

10. \_\_\_\_\_ has a very nice smell.

- ☐ a Smoke                      ☐ b Water                      ☐ c Incense                      ☐ d Paper

### 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد لترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. some - We - wax - need.

2. soap - need - much - do - we -     ?

3. Ancient - candies -      - made - mint - Egyptians.

4. have -    - a bath - need - to.

5. had -      - a long - his - hand - scepter - in.

### 6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

important - pepper - drink - perfumes - mint



# Test

6

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. We use spices in our

- ☐ a paper      ☐ b food      ☐ c wood      ☐ d clothes

2. The spices give our food special .....

- ☐ a flavors      ☐ b wheat      ☐ c sugar      ☐ d favorite

3. Khan Al-Khalili is in .....

- ☐ a France      ☐ b Egypt      ☐ c China      ☐ d Japan

4. We can buy our ..... in Khan Al-Khalili

- ☐ a food      ☐ b pots      ☐ c spices      ☐ d pens

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... are people who look after and clean buildings.

- ☐ a Princes      ☐ b Archeologists      ☐ c Caretakers      ☐ d Explorers

2. The king sits on his throne and holds his ..... in his hand.

- ☐ a palace      ☐ b scepter      ☐ c dust      ☐ d steam

3. .... the lemons to make lemonade.

- ☐ a Knock      ☐ b Melt      ☐ c Squeeze      ☐ d Heat

4. We need some ..... to make candles.

- ☐ a wool      ☐ b wood      ☐ c water      ☐ d wax

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**cool - stir - bowl - cooker - eat**

We need a lot of ingredients to make soap. We need oil, flower petals and soap crystals. First, we put the ingredients for your soap in a . Heat the ingredients on a . Next,  the ingredients with a wooden spoon and take them off the cooker. When the ingredients are hard and . Press them into a soap container.



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



#### 4 Read the following text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص التالي واجب عن الأسئلة:

In the past, people in Ancient Egypt used personal care products for their cleanliness. Now, we use some of these products. For example, perfumes, cream, toothpaste and breath mints. But these products are different now. They are modern. We buy our toothbrushes from the pharmacy now, but in the past the toothbrush was a stick with small pieces of papyrus tied to it at one end.

#### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the passage is about .....  
☐ a personal care products      ☐ b living in the past  
☐ c modern methods      ☐ d making items
- Modern is the opposite of .....  
☐ a new      ☐ b old      ☐ c boring      ☐ d tiny
- We buy our toothbrushes from the .....  
☐ a station      ☐ b pharmacy      ☐ c school      ☐ d hospital

#### B- Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?
- Where can people buy personal products now?

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- homework - How - did - much - you - do?
- bread - There - in - isn't - the - any - fridge.
- on - of - the top -        - the candle - the flowers.





## Taking care



**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. There isn't ..... **(some)** honey in the jar.
2. I have ..... **(many)** money. I can buy the toy car.



**Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

we don't have any chocolate chip cookies



**Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

## Egyptian spices

### Guiding questions

- 1- How do we use spices?
- 2- Where are spices sold?



# General Revision on Units 4, 5 & 6

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات ٤ - ٥ - ٦

## Revision on vocabulary مراجعة على المفردات

(Unit 4)



balloons  
بالونات



streamers  
أشرطة الزينة



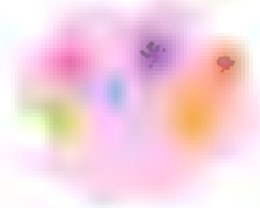
birthday cake  
تورتة عيد ميلاد



invitation  
دعوة



playlist  
قائمة تشغيل (أغاني)



fireworks  
ألعاب نارية

(Unit 5)



ride a camel  
يركب الجمل



travel by train  
يسافر بالقطار



sail by ship  
يبحر بالسفينة



go on a journey  
يذهب في رحلة طويلة



go on a voyage  
يذهب في رحلة بحرية



take a trip  
يقوم برحلة قصيرة

## (Unit 6)



perfume oil  
زيت عطري



wax  
مادة الشمع



drop  
قطرة



wick  
فتيل (الشمعة)



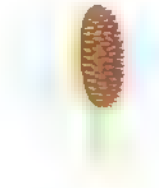
popsicle sticks  
عصي الايس كريم



soap  
صابون



shampoo  
شامبو



hairbrush  
فرشاة شعر



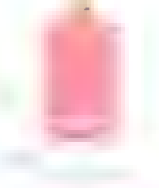
معجون أسنان



فرشاة أسنان



كريم



عطر



معطر الفم بالنعناع

## Important verbs

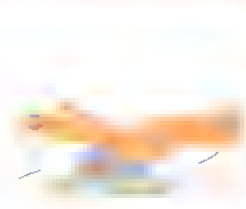
أفعال هامة



(ed)  
يسخن



(d)  
يعصر



(ed)  
يضغط



(red)  
يقلب

## Other words



## (Unit 4)

cycling  
celebration  
traditions  
blow out  
Mother's Day

ركوب الدراجات  
احتفال  
تقاليد  
يطفى (الشمع)  
عيد الأم

breath  
costume  
guest  
adult

النفس  
ملابس / زي  
ضيف  
راشد / بالغ

## (Unit 5)

|               |                     |             |                       |
|---------------|---------------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| advanced      | متقدم               | inspiration | إلهام                 |
| sculptures    | منحوتات             | sway        | يتأرجح                |
| archaeologist | عالم آثار           | wander      | يتجول                 |
| caravan       | قافلة               | wasteland   | الأرض القاحلة / البور |
| dromedaries   | جمال (وحيدة السنام) | legend      | قصة خرافية            |
| fascinated    | منبهر               | port        | ميناء                 |
| adventure     | مغامرة              | telescope   | تليسكوب               |
| exhausted     | مرهق                | felucca     | قارب شراعي            |

## (Unit 6)

|                  |                |              |                    |
|------------------|----------------|--------------|--------------------|
| candle           | شمعة           | crown        | تاج                |
| ingredients      | مكونات         | instructions | تعليمات            |
| paintings        | لوحات / رسومات | curtains     | ستائر              |
| herbs and spices | أعشاب وتوابل   | cinnamon     | نبات القرفة        |
| recipe           | وصفة           | souvenirs    | هدايا تذكارية      |
| flavors          | النكهات        | mint tea     | شاي بالنعناع       |
| combination      | مزيج / توليفة  | teapot       | إبريق الشاي        |
| astonished       | مندهش          | teaspoon     | ملعقة شاي صغيرة    |
| square candies   | حلوى مربعة     | tea leaves   | أوراق نبات الشاي   |
| caretaker        | مقدم الرعاية   | scepter      | صولجان (عصا الملك) |
| incense          | بخور           | throne       | عرش                |

## Adjectives

## صفات

|            |      |             |         |
|------------|------|-------------|---------|
| dangerous  | خطير | magical     | سحري    |
| empty      | فارغ | peaceful    | هادئ    |
| lost       | تائه | relaxing    | مريح    |
| mysterious | غامض | huge        | ضخم     |
| awesome    | مذهل | incredible  | لا يصدق |
| difficult  | صعب  | lovely      | جميل    |
| warm       | دافئ | traditional | تقليدي  |

## Conjugation of verbs

## أفعال

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

## أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present   | مضارع | Past       | ماضٍ | Present | مضارع         | Past    | ماضٍ |
|-----------|-------|------------|------|---------|---------------|---------|------|
| (Unit 4)  |       |            |      |         |               |         |      |
| decorate  | يزين  | decorated  |      | hang up | يعلق          | hung up |      |
| organize  | ينظم  | organized  |      | blow up | يمليء بالهواء | blew up |      |
| celebrate | يحتفل | celebrated |      | let     | يترك / يدع    | let     |      |

## Revision

|            |        |             |       |              |       |
|------------|--------|-------------|-------|--------------|-------|
| attend     | يحضر   | attended    | leave | يترك / يغادر | left  |
| confirm    | يؤكد   | confirmed   | burn  | يحترق        | burnt |
| dress up   | يتهنم  | dressed up  |       |              |       |
| figure out | يستنتج | figured out |       |              |       |

### (Unit 5)

|            |              |              |      |            |      |
|------------|--------------|--------------|------|------------|------|
| imagine    | يتخيل        | imagined     | fly  | يطير       | flew |
| sail       | يسبح         | sailed       | ride | يركب       | rode |
| call after | يسمي باسم    | called after | say  | يقول       | said |
| move       | يتحرك        | moved        | lose | يتوه / يضل | lost |
| roll       | يلف / يتدحرج | rolled       | know | يعرف       | knew |
| last       | يدوم         | lasted       |      |            |      |

### (Unit 6)

|        |             |         |          |                  |                 |
|--------|-------------|---------|----------|------------------|-----------------|
| notice | يلاحظ       | noticed | smell    | يشم / يصدر رائحة | smelt / smelled |
| knock  | طرق / دق    | knocked | hold up  | يمسك / لأعلى     | held up         |
| rub    | يدلك / يفرك | rubbed  | read out | يقرأ بصوت عال    | read out        |
|        |             |         | lean     | يستند على        | leant / leaned  |

## Revision on Grammar مراجعة على القواعد

### 1 The present continuous tense (من المضارع المستمر)

| فاعل              | إثبات   | نفي         | استفهام             |
|-------------------|---------|-------------|---------------------|
| I                 | am      | am          | Am (كلمة استفهام) + |
| He / She / It /   | is      | is          | Is + فاعل + v-ing?  |
| اسم مفرد          | + v-ing | not + v-ing |                     |
| We / You / They / | are     | are         | Are                 |
| اسم جمع           |         |             |                     |

#### Keywords

Look! - Listen! - now - at the moment - at present

١- يستخدم لوصف صورة. ٢- يعبر عن فعل يحدث الآن.

- Ex. 1. Noha and Laila are cleaning their room.  
 2. Adel is not talking on the phone.  
 3. What are Emad and Nabil doing?  
 4. Is Reem watching TV? - Yes, she is. / No, she isn't.

### 2

| إثبات                        | نفي                  | استفهام                           |
|------------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| فعل في التصريف الثاني + فاعل | didn't + inf. + فاعل | Did + فاعل + inf.? (كلمة استفهام) |

yesterday - last (week - month - year) - ago - in the past  
- once - in 2015

يعبر عن فعل حدث وانتهى في وقت محدد في الماضي

- Ex. 1. She **cooked** fish yesterday. 3. Did she **cook** rice yesterday?  
2. She **didn't cook** meat yesterday. - Yes, she **did** / No, she **didn't**.

### 3. Countable & Uncountable nouns

#### A Countable nouns (C)

أولاً : الأسماء التي يمكن عدّها

- الأسماء التي تعد إما أن تأتي مفردة فيسبقها **a / an / one** أو تأتي جمع دون إضافة **a** **an**  
- الأسماء التي تعد أما أن تنتهي بـ **s es ies ves** أو تجمع جمع شاذ مثل:

man → men child → children

#### B Uncountable nouns (U)

ثانياً : الأسماء التي لا تعد

- الأسماء التي لا تعد تعامل معاملة المفرد ومن أمثلتها كل المشروبات وبعض الأطعمة مثل:  
**water / sugar / milk / chocolate grass oil honey soup bread /**  
**money / homework / time / traffic / juice**

#### How many? كم للعدد...

- للسؤال عن الأسماء التي تعد:

- How many oranges do you need?
- I need **two** oranges.
- I need a **few** oranges.
- يمكن الرد على سؤال **How many** برقم أو كمية تقريبية يسبقها ( **a few / a little / some** )

**some** بعض

- تأتي مع الجملة المثبتة وقبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد:

- There are **some** boys in the park.

**A little** قليل من

- تأتي أمام الأسماء التي لا تعد فقط:

- There is **a little** tea in the kitchen.

**A lot of** كثيراً من

- There are a lot of books in my room.
- I like eating a lot of honey.

#### How much? كم للكمية...

- للسؤال عن الأسماء التي لا تعد:

- How much sugar do you have?
- I have **a little** sugar.
- لا يمكن الرد على سؤال **How much** إلا بكمية تقريبية تسبقها: ( **some / a little / a lot** )

**any** أي

- تأتي مع الجملة المنفية والسؤال وقبل اسم جمع أو اسم لا يعد:

- There aren't any lemons.
- Is there **any** milkshake?

**A few** قليل من

- تأتي أمام الأسماء التي تعد (الجمع) فقط:

- There are **a few** people in the street.

- تأتي أمام الأسماء التي تعد (الجمع) والأسماء التي لا تعد:

# General Test - Units (4 - 5- 6)

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. Sama likes .....

- ☐ a math      ☐ b music      ☐ c Arabic      ☐ d English

2. Today is her ..... birthday.

- ☐ a friend's      ☐ b sister's      ☐ c brother's      ☐ d father's

3. Sama is going to make a new .....

- ☐ a book      ☐ b playlist      ☐ c candle      ☐ d pen

4. Sama and her ..... like to listen to music.

- ☐ a cousins      ☐ b friends      ☐ c students      ☐ d family

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Farmers usually have many farming .....

- ☐ a stones      ☐ b tools      ☐ c nuts      ☐ d sculptures

2. We let off ..... on my birthday. It was amazing.

- ☐ a invitations      ☐ b streamers      ☐ c balloons      ☐ d fireworks

3. Each candle has one.....

- ☐ a button      ☐ b wick      ☐ c hand      ☐ d drop

4. A king always sits on a .....

- ☐ a scepter      ☐ b desk      ☐ c castle      ☐ d throne

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**decorated - fireworks - amazing - invitations - dark**

Yesterday was my cousin's birthday party. The party was ..... and my cousin was very happy. We all helped my uncle. My mother ..... the birthday cake. I sent the ..... . My dad let off the ..... . My brother helped my uncle blow up the balloons.

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Ihab. I like sailing across the Nile. My friends and I usually go on a felucca across the Nile. We don't sail the felucca by ourselves. It's not easy to sail. There is always someone to sail it for us. The felucca has a big white sail which moves slowly in the wind. It's very enjoyable. The trip is always amazing. We enjoy the sunny weather. The best place to go on a felucca is in Aswan.

##### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They usually sail across the Nile in..... weather.

☐ a messy

☒ b sunny

☐ c rainy

☐ d cloudy

2. The felucca sail moves ..... in the wind.

☐ a carelessly

☒ b strongly

☐ c quickly

☐ d slowly

3. The felucca has a big .....

☐ a wood

☒ b sail

☐ c pen

☐ d paper

##### B- Answer the following questions:

4. What does Ihab like to do?

5. What's the best place to go on a felucca?

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. a little - is - A wick - cotton rope - the candle - inside.

2. the - invitations - you - by email - sending?

3. perfumes - Egyptians - loved - strong - the.

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

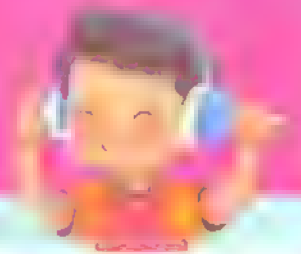
اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She ..... (**plays**) football yesterday.

2. There isn't ..... (**some**) sugar in the bag.



# Listening Material



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة باستئلة الاستماع الواردة فى الوحدات والاختبارات

## Unit 1

### Lesson 1

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

I visit my grandpa every summer. He lives in the country and he has a big farm. He plants potatoes, peppers, onions and lettuce on his farm. I usually help him to harvest these crops.

### Lesson 3

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

I live in a big city. There are many places to visit. There are lots of different restaurants and the food is tasty. There is a big park. I go to the park every Friday and play football with my friends. We read and borrow books at the library. We go shopping at the shopping center. I love my city.

### Test Unit 1

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Hala lives with her family in an apartment in the city. She has two sisters. They go shopping in the city center. Hala doesn't like going to the park. On Friday, she stays at home and helps her mum.

## Unit 2

### Lesson 1

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Adel is a new student at El Salam Primary school. Adel's friend is Hatem. Hatem is very clever. He is good at math. Hatem shows Adel where his classroom is. Hatem stays with him at break. Hatem is very friendly.

### Lesson 2

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Omar is a student in primary 6. He likes his school very much. Omar is clever. He likes math. Omar likes to play football in the playground. Omar doesn't like to play basketball.

## Lesson 3

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Amr is a polite boy. He likes vegetables. Amr eats carrots. He likes fruit, too. He likes bananas very much. His father has a dog. Amr is scared of dogs.

## Lessons 4-5

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Fatma likes pets. She has a pet dog. The dog has sharp claws and teeth. Fatma takes the dog for a walk every day. The dog is calm and quiet.

## Test Unit 2

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Basel is in primary 6. Basel has a friend called Hazem. Basel likes his teachers very much. Basel likes Arabic, too. Miss Hanan is the teacher of Arabic. Basel likes Miss Hanan. She is kind to him.

## Unit 3

### Lesson 1

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Last vacation my friend Sherif went to Cairo. He's from Luxor. In Cairo he visited many places. First, he went to the Egyptian Museum and took photos with his camera. After that, he went on a boat and saw the Nile. It was an amazing vacation.

### Lesson 3

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Hisham and his friend Amged went to see the Pyramids in Giza. They went by taxi. At the Pyramids they saw great views. Amged walked in the desert and he wanted to climb mountains, but Hisham was afraid of heights. But he decided to face his fear. At first, Hisham's face was white, but his friend took his hand and climbed together.



### Test Unit 3

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

We like vacations. We should plan to go to good places. We can choose the cheapest and quietest place to spend our holiday. We should think how to get to this place and the suitable time for us.

### Review 1

#### General Test on Units 1, 2 & 3

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer.

Nabil went to a new school last week. He found out that each friend had a different personality. Essam is calm. Sherif is polite and shy. Ahmed is very clever. He's good at math. He helps his friends with their homework.

### Unit 4

#### Lesson 1

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Today is Adel's birthday. Adel is twelve years old. Adel invites his friends to the party. Adel's mother makes him a big cake. Adel's mother decorates the cake. Adel has twelve candles on the cake.

#### Lesson 3

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

I'm Hossam. Last week was my friend's birthday. He had a big party and invited all his friends. I went there too. There was a big cake. My friend blew out the candles with one breath.

#### Test Unit 4

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

In China, people eat noodles on their birthday. The noodles are very long to represent a long life for the person. It's a tradition there.

### Unit 5

#### Lesson 3

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Marco Polo went to many places he didn't know. He went to the Gobi Desert for the first time in 1275. He was amazed and fascinated by the sand dunes. The wind made the sand dunes move and roll like huge yellow waves. The dromedaries in the caravan moved slowly up and down the dunes.

#### Test Unit 5

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Mrs. Esraa is a teacher of English. She has two children, Moamen and Toka. She likes traveling to different places with her family on vacation. Last summer, she went to Giza and visited the Pyramids and the Sphinx. She also went to Cairo and visited the Egyptian Museum.

### Unit 6

#### Lesson 1

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Candles are very important. We use them everywhere to get light. Others use them to decorate their homes. Some people use candles on special occasions, like birthday parties.

#### Test Unit 6

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

We like putting spices in our food. The spices give our food special flavors. Khan Al-Khalili is an area in Egypt. It's famous for selling all different kinds of spices. People from all the country go there to buy spices.

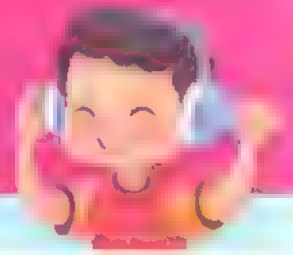
### Review 2

#### Test on Units 4, 5 & 6

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

My name is Sama. I like music. Today is my best friend's birthday. I'm going to make a new playlist on my phone. We love to listen to music.

# Listening Materials on Pronunciation



نصوص الاستماع الخاص بدروس الصوتيات داخل الوحدات

## Unit ①

### Lesson 3

1- Listen and circle the word you hear:

1. sick    2. throw    3. path    4. mouse    5. sing

2- Listen and complete the words with (s) or (th):

1. see    2. thirsty    3. stalk    4. thanks  
5. bath    6. bus    7. soft    8. selfish    9. through

## Unit ②

### Lesson 3

4- Listen and circle the word you hear:

1. hat    2. bug    3. stuck    4. ankle

## Unit ③

### Lesson 3

2- Listen and circle the word you hear:

1. wet    2. whale    3. west

3- Listen. Complete the words with (v) or (w).

1. walk    2. van    3. web  
4. visit    5. warm    6. vase  
7. water    8. window    9. volcano


## Unit ④

### Lesson 3

3- Listen and circle the word that you hear:

1. Is this the main paragraph in the text?  
2. I think the tools are in the shed  
3. I want to sail a boat!  
4. Gameela said that she's excited about her holiday.  
5. Hani has a pain in his foot.



Bit  Bit

كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية



# CONNECT

الصف السادس الابتدائي  
الفصل الدراسي الأول

ملحق  
تسميع المفردات  
والواجب المنزلي



6th

PRIMARY SIX  
FIRST TERM

دار غرة



طبع والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com



## Lessons 1 &amp; 2



## Vocabulary

|                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| منظمة/مؤسسة     | تمر - بلح      |
| نوع - فصيلة     | عمارة سكنية    |
| الطبيعة         | مواد كيميائية  |
| بشكل طبيعي      | سماد طبيعي     |
| الحياة البرية   | يحصد           |
| أحبنى           | سقف منزل - سطح |
| مشروع           | حديقة اجتماعية |
| بيانات          | متطوع          |
| كائنات حية      | حي سكني        |
| خاص - مميز      | طازج           |
| مسابقة - منافسة | بلكونة         |
|                 | وجبة خفيفة     |

## Conjugation of verbs

| Present    | Past | Present    | Past |
|------------|------|------------|------|
| يررع       |      | يجمع       |      |
| ينتج       |      | يقدم/ يعرض |      |
| ينمو/ يزرع |      | يفهم       |      |
| يبيع       |      | يصبح       |      |
|            |      | يقود       |      |

## lessons 1&2

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: القنبوية - إدارة عرب سيرا الخيمة (2023)

festival - block - Fridays - cleaning - local

Nour asks Mariam to go to her house tomorrow but Mariam goes to help her aunt on ① . They work in a community garden on the roof of an apartment ② . They grow vegetables and fruit for people in the ③ area. Mariam thinks that the community garden is a good idea for ④ the air in the city.

### 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. sells - My uncle - in - vegetables - market - the.

2. fertilizer - Natural - good - is - for - food - growing.

باسمكندرية - دة سيرة (2023)

3. areas - Green - the people - affect - wildlife - and.

4. flowers - plant - I - the roof - on.

صيلة - إدارة عرب سيرا (2023)

5. never - We - foreign - grow - plants.

الدفهنية - إدارة عرب المنصورة (2023)

6. often - How - it - does - rain?

القنبوية - إدارة عرب سيرا الخيمة (2023)

### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التي بين الأقواس:

1. How ..... (always) do you eat snacks?

2. I ..... (visits) my uncle on Fridays.

ص - إدارة الوصف (2023)

3. We ..... (eat never) unhealthy food.

باسمكندرية - إدارة الحمام (2023)

4. He often ..... (see) his aunt on Fridays.

صوبية (2023)



# Lessons 3, 4 & 5



## Vocabulary

|                 |             |
|-----------------|-------------|
| اسكتلندى        | مقابلة      |
| خط سكة حديد     | مسافة       |
| طابق / دور      | تقليد       |
| مشهور           | منظر رائع   |
| يعتقد شخص       | مميز - خاص  |
| أنانى           | عسل         |
| لين / ناعم      | نوع - فصيلة |
| فارغ            | عصيدة       |
| ثقب / فتحة      | دافئ        |
| صامت            | غير رسمى    |
| ضئيل / صغير جدا | سهم         |
| السكان المحليون | فى النهاية  |

## Conjugation of verbs

| Present | Past | Present | Past |
|---------|------|---------|------|
| يشئ     |      | يشعر    |      |
| يقرر    |      | يسقط    |      |
| يمر     |      | يخبر    |      |
| يشارك   |      | يجرى    |      |
| يغطي    |      | يفكر    |      |
| يضحك    |      | يتسكع   |      |

# Activities lessons 3,4 & 5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: احتر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The ..... line is a road for trains.

(2020)

- a fishing      b trade      c railway      d plants

2. The ..... residents are people who live in a neighborhood.

- a local      b sad      c old      d young

3. When I go on holidays, I ..... my friends.

(2020)

- a hate      b miss      c taste      d pass

4. The ..... from the window is very nice. I love nature.

- a review      b view      c wall      d bowl

5. I live on the ..... floor of a big apartment block.

(2020)

- a three      b third      c bird      d street

6. We use natural chemicals in ..... food.

(2020)

- a bad      b cold      c organic      d ugly

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. centre - is - in - the - Our - city - apartment.

2. a great -    - have - the tree - over - view.

3.    - is - OK - food.

4.    - my - miss - favorite - Egyptian - food.

5. friends -    - have - a lot - of - school - at.

6. things -    - do - miss - you - your country - about?

# Unit 2

## We are all different

### Lessons



### Vocabulary

|             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| متوتر       | صالَة ألعاب        |
| هادئ        | حجرة الدراسة       |
| خحول        | فخور               |
| مؤدب        | كرة القدم الخماسية |
| منظم        | موقع على الانترنت  |
| لطيف - جميل | كمبيوتر لوحى       |
| ماهر - شاطر | مسلسل تليفزيونى    |
| فوضوي       | كمبيوتر محمول      |
| عطوف        | صيدلية             |
| ودود        | دواء               |
| متعاون      | معمل               |
| مضحك        | سمنية فضاء         |
| حريص        | نادى رياضى         |

### Conjugation of verbs

| Present      | Past | Present  | Past |
|--------------|------|----------|------|
| يذاكر / يدرس |      | يقضى وقت |      |
| يستلف/يستعير |      | يختبئ    |      |
| يكرر         |      | يحدث     |      |



# Activities lessons 1&2







## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2023)

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

who - family - because - popular - Earth

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series. It's  with people of all age groups. It's interesting  it takes place in the future of a planet called Wanda. This is a world where humans live because the  is now too hot. The series tells the story of a boy called Frey who wants to return the Earth to look for his  .....

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The classroom isn't messy. It's .....

(2023)

☐ a messy

☐ b tidy

☐ c happy

☐ d nervous

2. Yara is good at math, she is .....

(2023)

☐ a shy

☐ b nervous

☐ c clever

☐ d worried

3. The ..... is the place where we do experiments.

(2023)

☐ a bathroom

☐ b laboratory

☐ c garden

☐ d library

4. Aya is always ..... She is worried about talking to people.

☐ a friendly

☐ b messy

☐ c shy

☐ d clever

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

أكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التي بين الأقواس:

1. This is the math question ..... (who) I don't understand.

2. The classroom ... (when) we learn is clean.

(2023)

3. The TV series was very ..... (bore). I didn't like it.

4. Yesterday's math lesson was very ..... (interest).



# Lessons

3

4

5



## Vocabulary

|              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| مخالب        | فار         |
| حيوان أليف   | فئران       |
| فراء         | غابة        |
| رفاهية/سعادة | حشائش       |
| ودود         | معدة        |
| تمشيه        | يخرج مسرعاً |
| طعام         | ضوضاء       |
| أرنب بري     | خائف        |
| قرد          | مندھش       |
| فيل          | سحلية       |

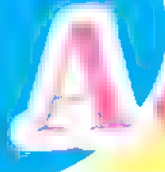
## Conjugation of verbs

| Present | Past | Present      | Past |
|---------|------|--------------|------|
| يتذكر   |      | يخبر         |      |
| يتحرك   |      | يهرب         |      |
| يبكي    |      | يُدلّل       |      |
| يضحك    |      | يلمس         |      |
| يرقد    |      | يحتفظ ب/يربي |      |
| يتحدث   |      | يعتقد        |      |
| يدخل    |      | يأخذ         |      |

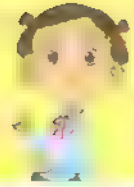
## Adjectives

### صفات

|        |                      |
|--------|----------------------|
| هادئ   | مستقل/يعتمد على نفسه |
| نظيف   | ناعم/لين             |
| إيجابي | جميل                 |
| سلبي   | حاد                  |



# Activities lessons 3,4 & 5



## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**teeth - independent - animals - friendly - plants**

Cats are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm

- ① . They are usually ② . . . . . . They like people but they are  
③ . Cats have sharp claws and ④ . , but they only use  
them when they are scared.

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

( اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: )

1. Cats are my best . . . . . .

( المتوقفة - إدارة الشؤون (2023) )

☐ a books

☐ b fruits

☐ c pets

☐ d vegetables

2. I'm very . . . . . . I want some food.

( الجيرة - إدارة الشؤون (2023) )

☐ a angry

☐ b hungry

☐ c worried

☐ d nervous

3. Cats have soft . . . . . . which is nice to touch.

☐ a claws

☐ b teeth

☐ c paws

☐ d fur

4. My mother doesn't need any help. She is ..

☐ a unkind

☐ b independent

☐ c tall

☐ d nervous

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. a bit - shy - I - feel - nervous - and.

( استكشافية - إدارة الشؤون (2023) )

2. Cats - fur - soft - beautiful - with - are.

( من - إدارة الشؤون (2023) )

3. likes - She - to - lie - all - bed - day - in her.

( سيوط - إدارة الشؤون (2023) )

4. hears - Hare - a noise - inside - house - her.

( هيك - إدارة الشؤون (2023) )



# October Test 1 on Units (1)&(2)

**Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

(2021)

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. \_\_\_\_\_ are my favorite animals.

☐ a Bats

☐ b Cats

☐ c Hats

☐ d Mats

2. Cats are beautiful with \_\_\_\_\_ fur.

☐ a soft

☐ b good

☐ c bad

☐ d hard

3. They are clean and \_\_\_\_\_ animals.

☐ a tired

☐ b thirsty

☐ c happy

☐ d calm

4. Cats have sharp claws and \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a teeth

☐ b hands

☐ c legs

☐ d fingers

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hany is very \_\_\_\_\_. He shows respect to everyone.

(2021)

☐ a polite

☐ b shy

☐ c nervous

☐ d messy

2. Mini Forest \_\_\_\_\_ help to look after the trees.

(2021)

☐ a doctors

☐ b volunteers

☐ c teachers

☐ d tourists

3. We play basketball in \_\_\_\_\_ lessons.

(2021)

☐ a Math

☐ b science

☐ c IT

☐ d physical education

4. We grow \_\_\_\_\_ food with no chemicals.

(2021)

☐ a black

☐ b organic

☐ c bad

☐ d fast



**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

شهر الشيخ إدارة مودة (2023)

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

grow - plants - roof - sell - tomorrow

Amr asks Adel to go to his house , but Adel goes to help his uncle on Fridays. They work in a community garden on the of an apartment block. They vegetables and fruit for people in the local area, and sometimes they them, too. Adel thinks the community garden is a good idea.



**Read the text and answer the questions:**

(2023)

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hany. I help new students get to know the school and their classrooms. I take them around and I stay with them at the break. I helped a new student yesterday. His name is Ali. He was very nervous and shy. I shared my book with him and I gave him extra copies of the worksheets. I love helping my friends. Next Friday, we will go to Cairo together and visit the Pyramids there.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The main idea of the text is about .

☐ a helping new students

☐ b playing football

☐ c studying

☐ d teachers at school

2. Ali was shy and .

☐ a happy

☐ b nervous

☐ c strong

☐ d organized

3. Hany is .

☐ a helpful

☐ b frightened

☐ c messy

☐ d nervous

**B. Answer the following questions:**

4. What did Hany share with Ali?

5. What will they visit in Cairo?



## Dictation & Exercises



**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. was - tired - I - last - really - night.

(2023) العربية - إدارة شؤون طباط

2. lemons - \_\_\_\_ - we - dates - have - and - year.

(2023)

3. watch - \_\_\_\_ - TV - you - do - often?

(2023)



**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Dalia is the girl ..... (where) sits next to me.

(2023)

2. Tomatoes, peppers and onions ..... (15) vegetables.

(2023)



**Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

are you angry



**Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

play sports - study science



## October Test 2 on Units (1)&(2)

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

(2020)

1. Asmaa and Hoda are .....

- ☐ a sisters      ☐ b friends      ☐ c students      ☐ d plants

2. Hoda goes to help her .....

- ☐ a uncle      ☐ b aunt      ☐ c father      ☐ d mother

3. They work in a .....

- ☐ a park      ☐ b station  
☐ c school      ☐ d community garden

4. The community garden is on the .....

- ☐ a city      ☐ b park      ☐ c roof      ☐ d floor

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... food doesn't have any chemicals.

- ☐ a Fast      ☐ b organic      ☐ c Bad      ☐ d Ugly

2. My friend is tidy, he is .....

- ☐ a nervous      ☐ b organized      ☐ c messy      ☐ d shy

3. I have a nice cat at home, it's the best .....

- ☐ a bat      ☐ b pet      ☐ c ball      ☐ d bike

4. Many farmers ..... the vegetables when they grow.

- ☐ a destroy      ☐ b play      ☐ c harvest      ☐ d draw

## Dictation & Exercises

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار: (بنى سورى - إدارة سمسطا - 2020)

side - view - floor - food - apartment

I live with my family. We live in a big ① . It is on the third ② .  
There is a big park on the other ③ of the street. We have a great ④  
from the balcony. We have green spaces in our neighborhood. We usually go and  
play with our friends there.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Ahmed. I live in the countryside on a farm. It's near a town called Asyut. My  
village is near the River Nile. My father grows organic food. He doesn't put any  
chemicals to the vegetables and fruits.

My mother is a housewife. She helps my father in the field. She always cooks good  
food. My sister Nada helps my mother cook a lot of food. I love my family very much.  
We always visit our relatives on weekends.

ضع إجابتك من a b c or d

- The underlined pronoun "He" refers to .....  
☐ a Ahmed      ☐ b Father      ☐ c mother      ☐ d Nada
- Ahmed lives in the .....  
☐ a town      ☐ b city      ☐ c countryside      ☐ d moon
- The village is near the .....  
☐ a station      ☐ b River Nile      ☐ c mall      ☐ d sea

### B Answer the following questions:

- What does the father grow?  
.....
- Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.  
.....



**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. plants - grow - We - never - foreign.

2. shows - everyone - She - to - respect.

3. science - Where - do - you - study?

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Is this the book ..... (who) you bought?

2. My friend ..... (eats always) organic food.

**7 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

how does Mini Forest help people - - - - -

**8 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements about A community garden:**

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your name is Hussein and your email address is Hussein 22@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is Tamer@yahoo.com.

**Guiding phrases**

apartment block - on the roof

| New Message  |       | Cc Bcc |  |
|--|-------|--------|--|
| To   | ..... |        |  |
| From   | ..... |        |  |
| Subject  | ..... |        |  |
| <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> |       |        |  |

## Unit

## 3

## Vacation plans

## Lessons



## Vocabulary

يلتقط صور

نخفيص

أحازة

مرشد

غروب الشمس

مغامرة

يركب دراجات رباعية

يبحث عن كلمة

قصر

كارت أتمان

مئذنة

حولة سياحية

سوق

محفظة

متحمس

بحر

قطار الملاهي

صائح

يتسلق

محاني

موقع الكتروني

تراب - غبار

يقرر

خوذة

## Conjugation of verbs

## Present

## Past

## Present

## Past

يزور

يحتفل

يصل

يأتي

يستكشف

يدفع [مالاً]

يسخر

يتكلف

يركز

يسجل / يدون

يدوم / يستمر

يقابل

# A ctivities lessons 1&2



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابه الصحيحه:

1. There many rides to try in the

(2023)

- ☐ a station      ☐ b theme park      ☐ c museum      ☐ d souks

2. I like to \_\_\_\_\_ new things and places so I travel a lot and search for things.

(2023)

- ☐ a eat      ☐ b explore      ☐ c take      ☐ d play

3. If you eat a \_\_\_\_\_ meal at lunchtime. You can work better.

- ☐ a bad      ☐ b ugly      ☐ c healthy      ☐ d unhealthy

4. You need your credit card to \_\_\_\_\_ for the shopping.

- ☐ a relax      ☐ b see      ☐ c pay      ☐ d eat

## 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التى بين الأقواس:

1. We have math lessons (at) Thursday.

2. If you mix yellow and green, you (got) blue.

3. I go to Luxor \_\_\_\_\_ (on) winter.

(2023)

4. He always goes to school \_\_\_\_\_ (in) Sunday mornings.

5. My school was built (at) 2010.

6. If you heat sugar, it (melt).

(2023)

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. meet - us - will - Where - the guide?

2. excited - I'm - about - vacation - my.

(2023)

3. about - Study - 30 - for - minutes.

(2023)



# Lessons 3, 4 & 5



## Vocabulary

|                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| وصف             | جولات           |
| مرتفعات         | بيتل            |
| خوف             | مدينة ملاهي     |
| بحيرة           | محاكاة          |
| نهر صغير - جدول | شجاع            |
| قبة             | محيط            |
| بركة مياه       | احتفال - مهرجان |
| غزال            | مسرح            |
| سر              | وجهة الوصول     |
| نقى             | شاشة            |
| قبة             | شلال            |
| خائف من         | متعة            |
| جذاب            | حول             |

## Conjugation of verbs

| Present | Past | Present       | Past |
|---------|------|---------------|------|
| يحبط    |      | يستريح/يستريح |      |
| يرفع    |      | يشرب          |      |
| يتلألأ  |      | يبين/يظهر     |      |
| يصل إلى |      | يعوم          |      |
| يواجه   |      | يتكلف         |      |
| يتنفس   |      | يشاهد         |      |
| يخمن    |      |               |      |

# Activities lessons 3,4 & 5



**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**eats - photo - Dome - excited - places**

Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It's Amal's first time in Aswan. She is very **excited**. She wants to see all famous **places**. Amal shows Fatima a **photo** and tells her that they can visit the **Dome** of Abu Al Hawa and they can also climb up the hill to it.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. How much does this pen .....?

(2023)

**a** past

**b** lost

**c** cost

**d** catch

2. We went to Aswan last year. It was our .....

(2023)

**a** pollution

**b** destination

**c** population

**d** simulation

3. She decides to ..... her fear.

(2023)

**a** ear

**b** face

**c** nose

**d** eye

4. Let's go to the beach to .....

(2023)

**a** travel

**b** damage

**c** relax

**d** bake

**Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. can - How - climb - the hill - up - you?

(2023)

2. is - afraid - She - heights - of.

(2023)

3. wants - happy - to - She - make - her family.

(2023)

4. park - There's - near - a big - river - the.



# Unit 4



## Celebrate good times!

### Lessons 1 & 2



#### Vocabulary

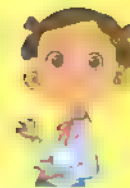
|                     |              |
|---------------------|--------------|
| ركوب الدراجات       | خطاب         |
| حفلة                | داخل المنزل  |
| قارئ                | ألعاب نارية  |
| ينظم                | أشرطة الزينة |
| اختبار              | الشموع       |
| وقت فراغ            | قائمة تشغيل  |
| تاريخ               | ساحة - فناء  |
| يؤدي تمرينات رياضية | دعوة         |
| مراجعة              | نفس          |
| مهم - هام           | بالوبات      |
| أخبار               | شخص بالغ     |
| قريباً              | خيط          |
| فيلم وثائقي         | مقص          |
|                     | طقس          |

#### Conjugation of verbs

| Present      | Past | Present     | Past |
|--------------|------|-------------|------|
| يمرر         |      | يرسل        |      |
| يربط         |      | يطلق        |      |
| يزين         |      | يقضي (وقت)  |      |
| يرمز إلى     |      | يرتدي       |      |
| يحتفل        |      | يقرا        |      |
| يعلق         |      | يبين / يوضح |      |
| يملأ بالهواء |      | يدرس        |      |



# Activities lessons 1&2



## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We use ..... to cut paper.

المقصية - ادارة شجر (2022)

- a strings      b pens      c scissors      d pencils

2. I write a/an ..... to ask my friends to come to my birthday party.

- a book      b invitation      c invention      d play

3. He plays with his friends in the ..... of the school.

- a yard      b laboratory      c station      d bedroom

4. I like history. I watch ..... films.

المصوية - ادارة الشوم (2022)

- a animal      b documentary      c funny      d sports

## 2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. community - We're - from - inviting - people - the local.

2. party - He - is - a - organizing.

المنظمة - ادارة ديرت بحم (2022)

3. coming - many - people - How - are?

4. forget - invite - Don't - to - friends - your.

السنوس - ادارة الاربعين (2022)

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct form in brackets:

اكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات التي بين الأقواس:

1. Where ..... your friends traveling this week?

الجرة - ادارة اوسيم (2022)

2. She is studying for the exam ..... (last) week.

3. Mai and Hala are ..... (have) lunch now.

الاسمعية - ادارة شرق (2022)

4. What ..... (am) you doing?

# Lessons



## Vocabulary

|                 |              |
|-----------------|--------------|
| يتنكر           | خوخ          |
| شخصية           | ضيف          |
| عنوان           | تقليد        |
| زى خاص          | هدية         |
| عيد الأم        | عادي - معتاد |
| مذهب            | شخص بالغ     |
| لغة رسمية       | في كل مكان   |
| رد              | مختلف        |
| حائزة           | احتفال       |
| تفاصيل          | وجبه ضعيفة   |
| الهجاء - التهجي | لهب          |

## Conjugation of verbs

| Present     | Past | Present   | Past |
|-------------|------|-----------|------|
| يحتفل       |      | يحضر      |      |
| يشمل        |      | يؤكد      |      |
| يدعو        |      | يستنتج    |      |
| يعادر/ يترك |      | يتحدث     |      |
| يصبح        |      | يكتب      |      |
| يحترق       |      | يعرف      |      |
| يُطفئ       |      | يترك/ يدع |      |
| يستلم       |      |           |      |



# Activities lessons 3,4 & 5



## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

house - presents - friends - candles - birthday

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. We make ❶ cakes for our children. We put ❷ on them to show their age. We often have parties with our family and ❸. The children usually get ❹, too.

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. "....." is the air that comes out of your mouth.

- a** View                      **b** Scene                      **c** Sound                      **d** Breath

2. I hope all the guests can ..... the party.

الموعد - حضوره (2023)

- a** miss                      **b** attend                      **c** ask                      **d** eat

3. My school celebrates Mother's Day . ..... every year.

- a** population                      **b** celebration                      **c** location                      **d** invention

4. I'm ..... up the streamers.

الملوونة - إدارة شئس الكوم (2023)

- a** hanging                      **b** blowing                      **c** cutting                      **d** feeding

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. hope - you - can - I - attend.

تسوسه - دوسه فوسه (2023)

2. are - We - organizing - party - a special.

تسوسه - دوسه فوسه (2023)

3. gets - peace of - Who - first - the - the cake?



# November Test 1 on Units (3)&(4)

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. .... is my birthday.

- ☐ a Friday      ☐ b Tomorrow      ☐ c Yesterday      ☐ d Today

2. I'm with my ..... at the carnival.

- ☐ a friends      ☐ b cousins      ☐ c family      ☐ d sisters

3. There are places to ..... and stores to buy, too.

- ☐ a swim      ☐ b eat      ☐ c dance      ☐ d sing

4. There are amazing rides like the .....

- ☐ a rollercoaster      ☐ b waterfalls      ☐ c carnival      ☐ d Orient Train

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We can ask Ahmed to ..... a playlist.

استمع (2023)

- ☐ a send      ☐ b make      ☐ c hang      ☐ d blow

2. There are enough chairs for all the ..... at the party.

مجموعة من الناس (2023)

- ☐ a guests      ☐ b meals      ☐ c traditions      ☐ d presents

3. There are amazing ..... to try like the rollercoaster.

مجموعة من الأشياء (2023)

- ☐ a groups      ☐ b rides      ☐ c fights      ☐ d tickets

4. Let's go quad ..... in the desert.

الخيول - إجازة طافية (2023)

- ☐ a fishing      ☐ b swimming      ☐ c biking      ☐ d playing



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

rollercoaster - try - excited - photos - biking

Hisham and Salah are planning for their vacation this week. They are very . They will take their mum with them. Salah suggested to  new places like Cairo where there are lots to see. Hisham wants to see the Manial Place Museum to take  for his school project. Salah wants to go to the theme park and ride a .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Mazen. Today is my birthday and guess where am I? I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the carnival! When we arrive at the park, we are suddenly in a world of fantasy and fairy tales; it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster if you are brave, and theaters where you can watch shows and concerts. There are places to eat and stores to buy, too. What a great birthday present- thanks Mom and Dad!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Where is Mazen? - At the .....

- ☐ a cinema      ☐ b museum      ☐ c carnival      ☐ d zoo

2. The underlined word "special" means .....

- ☐ a normal      ☐ b unusual      ☐ c difficult      ☐ d easy

3. If you are ....., you can try the rollercoaster.

- ☐ a sad      ☐ b bored      ☐ c angry      ☐ d brave

B. Answer the following questions:

4. Why is the carnival is an interesting place?

5. Does Mazen like his parent's present?

## Dictation & Exercises

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. are - and - Heba - What - doing - Hana?

سعد سويح - د ن ندر سويح (2023)

2. blow - Can - balloons - up - you - some?

3. about - I'm - vacation - my - excited.

مستشار ربة - د ن ندر سويح (2023)

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

افقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He was born. .... (at) June.

الهوفية - إدارة بركة السبيع (2023)

2. She is ..... (study) for the exam this week.

د ن ندر سويح - د ن ندر سويح (2023)

### 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

you look very tired

### 8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

The places you are going to visit

Guiding phrases

interesting and busy - amazing things to do

# November Test 2 on Units (3)&(4)

 **Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

(2023)

التمرين الثاني

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



1. The guide will meet them in the hotel at \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a 9 am

☐ b 9 pm

☐ c 10 am

☐ d 10 pm

2. They will be in a group of \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a five

☐ b six

☐ c seven

☐ d eight

3. They will ride the quad bike for \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a a day

☐ b a week

☐ c an hour

☐ d half an hour

4. They have to wear \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a shoes

☐ b helmets

☐ c glasses

☐ d shorts

 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة.

1. My friends are \_\_\_\_\_ the streamers for the party.

(2023)

☐ a blowing up

☐ b hanging up

☐ c letting off

☐ d knocking on

2. I play football in the \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a bathroom

☐ b station

☐ c yard

☐ d hospital

3. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ The Bab Zuweila minaret.

☐ a jump

☐ b climb

☐ c arrive

☐ d plan

4. I made a/an \_\_\_\_\_ of the best 30 songs nowadays.

☐ a cake

☐ b firework

☐ c playlist

☐ d invitation



## Dictation & Exercises

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

balloons - scissors - busy - hanging - blowing

Today, we are having a nice party. It's for my brother's birthday. We are all happy and ① \_\_\_\_\_, too. I'm ② \_\_\_\_\_ up the streamers for my brother's party. I use the ③ \_\_\_\_\_ to cut the string. My sister is blowing up some ④ \_\_\_\_\_. They are bright and colorful.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Hassan and Hatem are planning for their vacation this week. They are very excited. They will take their mum with them. Hatem suggested to try new places like Cairo where there are lots to see. Hassan wants to see Manial palace museum to take photos for his school project. He thinks that museums are very **interesting** places. Hatem wants to go to the theme park and ride a rollercoaster. Also they are going to visit other places outside Cairo like going quad biking in the desert in Giza. If they take the bus, they will arrive in a bout 30 minutes. Exploring new places is a very good idea.

#### A Choose the correct answer from a b c or d

1. The word "**interesting**" is the opposite of

- ☐ a exciting      ☐ b boring      ☐ c tiring      ☐ d amazing

2. They want to ride on a \_\_\_\_\_ in the park.

- ☐ a rollercoaster      ☐ b camel      ☐ c horse      ☐ d bus

3. Hassan and Hatem are \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a guests      ☐ b friends      ☐ c teachers      ☐ d brothers

#### B. Answer the following questions:

4. Why does Hassan want to visit the Manial palace museum?

5. How can you explore new places?

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. are - There - a lot of - at the - rides - carnival.

(2020) سبتمبر

2. had - I - such - a - experience - wonderful.

(2020) أغسطس

3. make - going to - Dalia - is - playlist - a.

(2020) ديسمبر

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My brothers play football ..... six o'clock.

(2020) ديسمبر

2. Are they ..... (watch) a funny movie?

**7 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

they re playing with the balloons.

**8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your free time

Guiding phrases

go running

doing sports

# Unit 5

## Amazing journeys

### Lessons 1 & 2



#### Vocabulary

|               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| صلصال         | مستكشف         |
| عالم آثار     | رحلات - سفريات |
| متقدم         | قرن (١٠٠ عام)  |
| زراعة         | رحلة قصيرة     |
| لغز / سر غامض | مغامرة         |
| حديد          | مفكرة          |
| اكتشاف        | قصيدة شعر      |
| منحوتات       | ببحر           |
| معقد          | رحلة بحرية     |
| طريقة         | منحف           |
| أدوات         | صعب            |
| إلهام         | رحلة طويلة     |
| ثقافة         | تقريبا         |

#### Grammar

| Present      | Past | Present    | Past |
|--------------|------|------------|------|
| يتخيل        |      | يطير       |      |
| يتوقف        |      | يركب       |      |
| يسافر        |      | يقرا       |      |
| يوافق        |      | يعتقد      |      |
| يسمي باسم    |      | يجد        |      |
| يتحرك        |      | يكتب       |      |
| يتدحرج / يلف |      | يتجمد      |      |
| يدوم         |      | يستطيع     |      |
|              |      | يتوه / يضل |      |



# Activities lessons 1&2



**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** احتر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- Amr went on a long voyage by the .....  
 a land                      b sea                      c desert                      d sand  
 (2022)
- Tourists like to ..... camels across the desert.  
 a drive                      b ride                      c play                      d fly
- A/An ..... is a person who studies very old objects.  
 a engineer                      b teacher                      c farmer                      d archaeologist
- Farmers use iron ..... for farming.  
 a pens                      b pencils                      c tools                      d books  
 (2022)

**2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

- iron - There - farming - were - tools.
- famous - What - were - they - for?
- sailed - He - ship - the island - to - by.
- for - Luxor - I - to - went - a week.

**3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- We ..... (don't) visit Aswan last summer. (المبوصلة - زيارته - لا - 2022)
- Did you ..... (plays) well? (الاستعداد - إدارة شرق - 2022)
- My family ..... (go) on vacation last week. (الاستعداد - زيارته - غرب المبوصلة - 2022)
- Ahmed and Hani ..... (was) in the school yesterday.
- ..... (Is) he happy last week? (الاستعداد - 2022)

# Lessons 3 , 4 & 5



## Vocabulary

|                     |               |
|---------------------|---------------|
| مبهر                | شراع          |
| قافلة               | سحري          |
| يتأرجح              | سمات / مميزات |
| يتجول               | آلة العود     |
| قصة خرافية - أسطورة | تقليدي        |
| محيف                | هادئ          |
| مطر طبيعي           | شروق الشمس    |
| كثبان رملية         | قبطان         |
| منهك                | الخشب         |
| صوت بشري            | نهر النيل     |
| خطير                | لذيذ          |
| معامرة              | ضخم           |
| فارغ                | لا يصدق       |
| أمواج               | لغة           |

## Conjugation of verbs

| Present | Past | Present | Past |
|---------|------|---------|------|
| يدوم    |      | يبدو    |      |
| يبحر    |      | يذهب    |      |
| يتوقف   |      | يصنع    |      |

# Activities lessons 3,4 & 5



## 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

أسوان (2022)

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

sails - traditional - felucca - amazing - skills

Today, I had an amazing experience. I went on a ① on the River Nile. A Felucca is a ② Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. The trip was ③. The boat had two white ④, which moved gently in the wind.

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My village is quiet and . I can sleep well and enjoy the weather.

a angry b hungry c peaceful d noisy

2. A/An is a group of camels and people traveling together.

a village b caravan c oasis d river

3. The Pyramids in Giza were .

a small b tiny c huge d angry

4. The is a person who sails the ship.

a nurse b captain c vet d teacher

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. you - legend - Did - the - hear?

الملوفية - إدارة الشهداء (2022)

2. were - What - like - dromedaries - the?

البحر الأحمر (2022)

3. experience - had - a - I - wonderful.

السويس (2022)

4. village - The - quiet - was - peaceful - and.

(2022)

## Lessons



## Vocabulary

|                      |             |
|----------------------|-------------|
| نبات الشعير          | يعصر        |
| رسومات               | يسخن        |
| العسل                | تعليمات     |
| وزة                  | فتيل الشمعة |
| بطة                  | زيت عطري    |
| تين                  | عصا         |
| اعشاب                | شمع النخيل  |
| بدور                 | يضعط        |
| القمح                | قطرة        |
| ثوم                  | بتلات       |
| مادة الشمع (شمع خام) | ملاعق       |

## Conjugation of verbs

| Present        | Past | Present       | Past |
|----------------|------|---------------|------|
| يقلب           |      | يمسك لأعلى    |      |
| يصف            |      | يقرأ بصوت عال |      |
| يشم/يصدر رائحة |      | يعتنى بـ      |      |
| يعتمد على      |      | يزرع          |      |
| يحفف           |      | يحافظ على     |      |
| يحفظ           |      |               |      |

# Activities lessons 1&2



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** احذر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Palm ..... makes really nice candles.

- ☐ a leaves      ☐ b wax      ☐ c dates      ☐ d trunks

2. They cut the ..... of the flowers.

- ☐ a ropes      ☐ b petals      ☐ c drops      ☐ d hands

3. A wick is a little cotton ..... inside the candle.

- ☐ a stick      ☐ b drop      ☐ c hand      ☐ d rope

4. Put little sugar in the milk and ..... it.

- ☐ a drop      ☐ b throw      ☐ c stir      ☐ d squeeze

**Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. Mangoes - There - some - grapes - and - are.

2. perfume - oil - ..... - candles - use - to make.

3. need - some - oil - We - perfume.

(2023) .....

4. need - do - we - What - candles - for - making?

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. How (many) sugar do we need to make a cake?

2. There (is) any tea, I want to have some.

(2023) .....

3. I bought ..... (a little) pens yesterday.

(2023) .....

4. I have ..... (a few) oil in the bottle.

(2023) .....



# Lessons 3, 4 & 5



## Vocabulary

|                |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| وصفة           | مقدم الرعاية |
| قماش           | لوحات مرسومة |
| مكونات         | أمير         |
| سر             | صولحان       |
| عجينة من الملح | عرش          |
| هدية تذكارية   | تاج          |
| سادة           | معجون أسنان  |
| صينية حبر      | مدهش / مذهول |
| فرن            | قصير         |
| يديب / يدوب    | حصان         |
| يخبز           | تمثال        |
| بقطع           | أثاث         |
| حليط           | سجاد         |

## Conjugation of verbs

| Present     | Past         | Present     | Past      |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|-----------|
| أفهم        | فهمت         | يفهم        | فهم       |
| أستند على   | استندت على   | يستند على   | استند على |
| أرتدي       | ارتديت       | يرتدي       | ارتدى     |
| أترك / أعاد | تركت / أعادت | يترك / يعاد | ترك / عاد |

# A

## Activities lessons 3,4 & 5



### 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإختيار أسفله

empty - shows - dining - head - throne

Peter and his parents live in a palace. His parents work there. one day Peter noticed something strange about the big painting in the ① room. This colorful painting ② one of the old kings sitting on the ③ with a crown on his ④ ..... and a long scepter in his hand.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The king's ring is ..... It's made of gold.

البحر الأحمر (2023)

a cheap

b weak

c precious

d long

2. The king lives in a .....

مطروح (2023)

a station

b palace

c library

d school

3. We use ..... to wash our face and hands.

بوسعيد (2023)

a toothbrush

b soap

c soup

d perfume

4. The king sits on the .....

المنوفية (2023)

a throne

b throw

c crown

d cream

### 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكونين جملا صحيحة:

1. spices - Egypt - famous - its - is - for.

القاهر (2023)

2. oven - the - Heat - a low - on temperature

الدمهلية (2023)

3. shampoo - we - for - What - do - use?

4. loved - The Ancient - strong - Egyptian - perfumes.

تغربة (2023)

# General Tests



امتحانات المحافظات على منهج الفصل الدراسي الأول

إدارة الزاوية التعليمية

**Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ are my favorite animals.

- ☐ a Bats      ☐ b Cats      ☐ c Hats      ☐ d Mats

2. Cats are beautiful with \_\_\_\_\_ fur.

- ☐ a soft      ☐ b good      ☐ c bad      ☐ d hard

3. Cats are clean and \_\_\_\_\_ animals.

- ☐ a tired      ☐ b thirsty      ☐ c happy      ☐ d calm

4. Cats have sharp claws and \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a teeth      ☐ b hands      ☐ c legs      ☐ d fingers

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. People who are \_\_\_\_\_ work for no money.

- ☐ a firefighters      ☐ b bloggers      ☐ c volunteers      ☐ d engineers

2. My uncle is a / an \_\_\_\_\_. He studies very old objects.

- ☐ a chef      ☐ b mechanic      ☐ c vet      ☐ d archeologist

3. Put little sugar in the tea and \_\_\_\_\_ it.

- ☐ a cut      ☐ b stir      ☐ c drop      ☐ d throw

4. There are amazing \_\_\_\_\_ to try like the rollercoaster.

- ☐ a groups      ☐ b rides      ☐ c fights      ☐ d tickets

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**independent - claws - fur - scared - walk**

Cats are my favorite pets. They have soft ① \_\_\_\_\_ which is nice to touch. They are beautiful and calm animals. Cats like people but they are ② \_\_\_\_\_. Cats have sharp ③ \_\_\_\_\_ and teeth, but they use them when they are ④ \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Maha. I'm 14 Years old. On holidays, I help my family and my friends at our community garden. On the roof of our apartment block, we have a big green space. People in the neighborhood volunteer to help and **grow** vegetables with us to eat. We usually grow tomatoes, peppers, onions and lettuce. Sometimes, we also plant fruit trees like lemons and dates. It's amazing to grow your own food.

#### A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "**grow**" means .....  
 a draw                      b cut                      c plant                      d need
- The main idea of the text is .....  
 a healthy habits                      b community garden  
 c sports                      d my favorite game
- Lemons and ..... are the fruit trees they plant.  
 a lettuce                      b dates                      c potatoes                      d mangoes

#### B- Answer the following questions:

- How do people help at the community garden?
- When does Maha help her family?

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- summer - in - **The weather** - is - sunny - usually.
- Italian - an - **Marco Polo** - is - explorer.
- The selfish** - anything - doesn't - boy - share.

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- He is ..... (**interesting**) in reading.
- When he ..... (**heat**) ice, it melts.

## Tests

7

**Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

are you angry.

8

**Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقره إيسائه من (٥٠) كلمه عن:

Guiding words

went on a felucca - see the river

Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

إدارة الحوامدية التعليمية

2

**Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن الاجتماع آخر الكراسة



- Injy was reading a ..... about her family's vacation.  
☐ a book      ☐ story      ☐ travel diary      ☐ magazine
- The favorite thing about the vacation was visiting the ..... Museum  
☐ Marco Polo      ☐ Ibn Battuta  
☐ Vasco da Gama      ☐ Ahmed Zweil
- Marco Polo was an ..... explorer.  
☐ American      ☐ French      ☐ Italian      ☐ Egyptian
- Injy was amazed by how ..... the journey to China was .....  
☐ easy      ☐ smart      ☐ difficult      ☐ cheap

2

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- We use natural ..... to grow organic food.  
☐ tools      ☐ views      ☐ weather      ☐ fertilizers
- The ..... is the place where we do experiments.  
☐ library      ☐ playground      ☐ laboratory      ☐ hall



3. Cats have soft \_\_\_\_\_ which is nice to touch.

- a** claws                      **b** fur                      **c** teeth                      **d** eyes

4. The word "celebration" means \_\_\_\_\_.

- a** party                      **b** game                      **c** invitation                      **d** experience

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**concentrate - minutes - forget - time - break**

It's important to study your lessons. It's not healthy to study for hours without a **1** \_\_\_\_\_. So you can study for about 30 **2** \_\_\_\_\_ but no longer. When you have regular breaks, you can **3** \_\_\_\_\_. It's good to study at the same **4** \_\_\_\_\_ every day.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, I went on a trip to the zoo. I went with my family. We left our house at ten o'clock in the morning. We arrived at the zoo at eleven o'clock. We got five tickets to get into the zoo. We were very excited. My sister Dina wanted to see the lion first, but my brother Hany wanted to see the elephant first. My father and mother decided to see the giraffe first. The giraffe is a very amazing animal. It is very tall with a long neck. After that, we saw the elephant. It's very big with a long trunk. We also saw the lion. It's very strong. It eats meat. It was fun and we were very happy.

**A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The main idea of the text is about a ...

- a** trip to the zoo                      **b** new supermarket  
**c** trip to the beach                      **d** monkey

2. The \_\_\_\_\_ is big with a long trunk.

- a** lion                      **b** elephant                      **c** giraffe                      **d** snake

3. The lion is very \_\_\_\_\_.

- a** happy                      **b** funny                      **c** strong                      **d** tall

**B- Answer the following questions:**

4. When did they arrive at the zoo?

5. How many tickets did they get?

## Tests



### Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. fall - leaves - The - trees - the - from.
2. the park- sports - at - People - do - like to.
3. world - the - all - Birthdays - are celebrated - over.



### Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My father ... .. (**goes always**) to work by car.
2. Mr. Adel is the teacher (**which**) helps me a lot.



### Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how much wax do we need



### Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

My birthday party

Guiding phrases

- all my family and friends
- play games and eat cakes

3

إدارة قها التعليمية

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



- Ahmed was ..... on his first day at school.  
☐ a organized      ☐ b shy      ☐ c messy      ☐ d friendly
- Hassan was the ..... who helped Ahmed.  
☐ a doctor      ☐ b teacher      ☐ c friend      ☐ d nurse
- Hassan was ..... at science.  
☐ a clever      ☐ b shy      ☐ c nervous      ☐ d polite
- Ahmed ..... his first day at school.  
☐ a helped      ☐ b took      ☐ c needed      ☐ d enjoyed

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- Marco Polo was a famous .....  
☐ a trader      ☐ b farmer      ☐ c explorer      ☐ d fisherman
- Cats are my best .....  
☐ a fruit      ☐ b pets      ☐ c plants      ☐ d vegetables
- Organic food means we only use ..... to grow fresh food.  
☐ a chemicals      ☐ b roof      ☐ c garden      ☐ d natural fertilizer
- Let's go quad ..... in the desert in Giza.  
☐ a biking      ☐ b playing      ☐ c running      ☐ d swimming

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

wood - mixed - papyrus - seeds - mint

Ancient Egyptians used toothpaste and toothbrushes to clean their teeth. The toothbrush was a stick with small pieces of ☐ wood tied to it at one end. To keep their mouths fresh all day, they used ☐ mixed candies. To make these candies they ☐ seeds cinnamon, melon, pine ☐ mint and some nuts together with honey. Ancient Egyptians always took care of themselves and their bodies.



## Tests

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واحب عن الأسئلة:

Salma is inviting her mom to go to her school Mother's Day. At her school, they are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21<sup>st</sup>. Salma and her friend Reem are helping to get things ready. Salma is hanging up the streamers and blowing up the balloons. She is sending invitations to all her friends and their moms to come to the celebration. Reem is making a playlist on her phone for this event.

#### A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is about  
☐ a Salma's birthday ☐ b Reem's birthday  
☐ c Mother's Day ☐ d exams
- The celebration is in  
☐ a March ☐ b February ☐ c June ☐ d April
- Reem is sending  
☐ a streamers ☐ b balloons ☐ c invitations ☐ d phones

#### B- Answer the following questions:

- What does the underlined pronoun "She" refer to?
- What is Reem doing to help in this event?

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

- blow out - Children - candles - to - like - the.
- grow - What - you - do - things - usually?
- move - dunes - step - with - Sand - each.

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- This is the book ..... (who) I read yesterday.
- How ..... (many) lemon oil do we need?

**7 Punctuate the following:**

U.S. District Court

In india, candles are left to burn

**8** Write an email of Fifty (50) words or less, using the following elements:

اكتب إيمان من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

ur community garden

### Guiding words

roof garden - volunteers

Your name is Khalid, and your email address is khalid@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Adham, and his email address is adham@gmail.com.

New Message

To

Cc

Bcc

From

Subject

## اختبار القدرات

إدارة السادات التعليمية

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... are celebrated all over the world.

☐ a Birthdays

☐ b Holidays

☐ c Mondays

☐ d Fridays

2. We usually make birthday ..... for children.

☐ a beans

☐ b bread

☐ c eggs

☐ d cakes

3. We put ..... on cakes.

☐ a bottles

☐ b candles

☐ c carrots

☐ d basbousa

4. Children usually get a ..... , too.

☐ a sandwich

☐ b present

☐ c book

☐ d pen

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We went to the museum and ..... through a big gate.

☐ a slept

☐ b built

☐ c passed

☐ d missed

2. We can ..... up the hill to the dome of Abu Al-Hawa.

☐ a jump

☐ b climb

☐ c fly

☐ d swim

3. Tourists like to ..... camels across the desert.

☐ a drive

☐ b cycle

☐ c ride

☐ d fly

4. Kings live in a .....

☐ a garden

☐ b palace

☐ c school

☐ d shop

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

library - Friday - restaurants - visit - eat

I live in a big city. There are many places to ❶ ..... There are lots of different ❷ ..... and the food is tasty. There is a big park. I go to the park every ❸ ..... and play football with my friends. We read and borrow books at the ❹ ..... We go shopping at the shopping center.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واحب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Osama I love summer vacation for two reasons. The first reason is that I like summer fruit like grapes, mangoes and figs. The second reason is that we have

vacation for two months. Last vacation, I went to my grandparents' house for about a month. They live in a small village near Fayoum. I went there with my parents. Their house has lots of trees. There are mango trees and guava trees. We eat fresh fruit. Every evening, my grandfather takes us for a walk.

**A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- Osama likes \_\_\_\_\_ vacation.  
☐ a summer      ☐ b winter      ☐ c spring      ☐ d fall
- The underlined word "They" refers to \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a parents      ☐ b grandparents      ☐ c friends      ☐ d cousins
- His grandfather takes them for a \_\_\_\_\_ every evening.  
☐ a meeting      ☐ b walk      ☐ c party      ☐ d carnival

**B- Answer the following questions:**

- Where do Osama's grandparents live?
- How long did they stay in the grandparents' house?

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- go - park - to - Let's - theme - the.
- space - has - a lot - of - very - green.
- trying - friends - to - I - help - my.

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- ..... (off) you heat sugar, it melts.
- This is the street (who) my uncle lives.

**7 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

we can share my lunch today



## Tests

- 8** Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقالة إرشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

**Cats are the best pets**

Guiding elements

- They are my favorite animals.
- They are independent.

## 50

إدارة بلبس التعليمية

- 1** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



- Put the ingredients for your \_\_\_\_\_ in a bowl.  
☐ a soup      ☐ b space      ☐ c soap      ☐ d spice
- \_\_\_\_\_ the ingredients on a cooker.  
☐ a Hit      ☐ b Heat      ☐ c Hide      ☐ d Had
- Next, stir the ingredients with a \_\_\_\_\_ spoon.  
☐ a metal      ☐ b plastic      ☐ c wooden      ☐ d paper
- You can add flower \_\_\_\_\_ to make soap look and smell lovely.  
☐ a petals      ☐ b pedals      ☐ c beetles      ☐ d puddles

- 2** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- Early spring is the best season to \_\_\_\_\_ seeds in the ground.  
☐ a plant      ☐ b harvest      ☐ c drink      ☐ d paint
- We do science experiments in \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a libraries      ☐ b playgrounds      ☐ c laboratories      ☐ d courts



3. Fatima is afraid of heights, but she decides to face her .....  
 a trip                      b fear                      c view                      d secret
4. .... is the air that comes out of your mouth.  
 a Sound                      b Food                      c Fire                      d Breath

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

shows - carnival - matches - rides - fantasy

Today is my birthday party and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the **1** ..... ! It's an amazing place. When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a world of **2** ..... -it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing **3** ..... to try like the rollercoaster. There are theaters where you can watch **4** ..... There are places to eat and stores, too.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ العطفة واحب عن الأسئلة:

Every winter, thousands of people from all over the world come to spend their holidays in our great country, Egypt. They are tourists who come to enjoy the fine weather and sunshine of Egypt when it is very cold in their countries. They like to visit Luxor and Aswan. They like to see the ancient treasures of Egypt, so they like to visit the Egyptian Museum. They also visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx in Giza. Before they return home, They like to go to Khan El Khalili to buy some souvenirs.

**A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Most tourists usually visit Egypt in .....  
 a summer                      b spring                      c winter                      d fall
2. Tourists like to visit ..... to enjoy the fine weather in winter.  
 a Alexandria                      b London                      c Luxor and Aswan                      d Suez
3. They visit the Pyramids in .....  
 a Cairo                      b Giza                      c Tanta                      d Zagazig

**B- Answer the following questions:**

4. Why do tourists come to Egypt?
5. What do tourists buy at Khan El Khalili?



## Tests

### Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. studying - exams - my - I'm - hard - for.
2. honey - Bees - insects - make - are - which.
3. did - books - Where - your - find - you?

### Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Dalia (have) a gymnastics lesson twice a week.
2. How \_ \_ \_ (many) time do we have?

### Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

dina does her homework on the weekend

### Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

- When you went there.
- What the weather was like.

Writing tip



## اختبار التقييم

إدارة شرق طنطا التعليمية

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن الاستماع نحن التكرار



- Nardeen is ..... years old.  
☐ a eleven      ☐ b nine      ☐ c six      ☐ d twelve
- Nardeen lives with her family in .....  
☐ a Tanta      ☐ b Luxor      ☐ c Cairo      ☐ d Aswan
- There are many ..... places to visit in Luxor.  
☐ a dirty      ☐ b bad      ☐ c historical      ☐ d modern
- A lot of ..... visit Luxor every year.  
☐ a tourists      ☐ b teachers      ☐ c doctors      ☐ d students

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- We can ride on the rollercoaster at the .....  
☐ a library      ☐ b theme park      ☐ c museum      ☐ d minaret
- Mona is very ..... She is worried about talking to people.  
☐ a friendly      ☐ b messy      ☐ c shy      ☐ d nervous
- Can you ..... a playlist for the party?  
☐ a eat      ☐ b send      ☐ c cut      ☐ d make
- I need my credit card to ..... for the ticket.  
☐ a pay      ☐ b run      ☐ c play      ☐ d see

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**volunteers - market - tomorrow - green - vegetables**

We need more community gardens. The community garden is a big ① space on the roof of an apartment block. The people who work there are all ② from the neighborhood. They grow ③ to eat, and sometimes they sell them in the ④.

## Tests

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب الأسئلة:

Today, we are having a nice party. It's for my sister's birthday. My brother and I are helping my mom. She is making a big cake. My dad is hanging up the streamers for my sister's birthday. I am blowing up some balloons. They're bright and colorful. My mom made a special card and my brother is decorating the birthday cake. We have 10 balloons. My sister is 10 years old. My father sent the invitations to our friends.

#### A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I'm hanging up the .....  
☐ a balloons ☐ b invitations ☐ c streamers ☐ d balloons
- The underlined word "**excited**" means very .....  
☐ a bored ☐ b sad ☐ c angry ☐ d happy
- My sister is ..... years old.  
☐ a nine ☐ b ten ☐ c seven ☐ d fifteen

#### B- Answer the following questions:

4. What is my brother doing?

5. Who sent the invitations?

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. moving - the - **Something** - house - is - inside.

2. children - not - for - **Birthdays** - just - are.

3. go - book - **Where** - did - find - your?

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. When it ..... (**rain**), we play indoors.

2. I ..... the house (**who**) I was born.

**7 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم

we need some wax

**8 Write a paragraph following  
guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية

**An amazing trip**

**Guiding phrases**

fantastic places, news

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



- Nour asks Mariam to go to her house .....  
☐ a tomorrow      ☐ b today      ☐ c yesterday      ☐ d tonight
- Mariam goes to help her ..... on Fridays.  
☐ a uncle      ☐ b aunt      ☐ c sister      ☐ d cousin
- They ..... vegetables and fruit in the garden.  
☐ a draw      ☐ b grow      ☐ c clean      ☐ d play
- Mariam thinks the community garden is a ..... idea.  
☐ a good      ☐ b bad      ☐ c tall      ☐ d fast

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Sara is very ..... She likes talking to people.  
☐ a angry      ☐ b nervous      ☐ c shy      ☐ d friendly
- Hany is the boy ..... sits under the tree.  
☐ a what      ☐ b where      ☐ c who      ☐ d which
- Fully grown people, not children. They are .....  
☐ a babies      ☐ b adults      ☐ c children      ☐ d gardens
- How ..... lemons do we need for the lemonade?  
☐ a many      ☐ b long      ☐ c much      ☐ d old

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**has - but - hotels- weather- go**

Sharm El-Sheikh is a beautiful town in Egypt. It is in the east of Egypt. It has a nice ① ..... Tourists from all over the world visit it every year. Sharm El-Sheikh ② ..... a lot of things to do. Tourists can ③ ..... diving in the Red Sea. They can go shopping at department stores. Tourists can stay in ④ ..... Sharm El-Sheikh is a green town.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

One day, we went on a picnic. We took some delicious food and fresh juice with us. We played football. In the afternoon, we went to a temple. My father told us that it was very old. The temple was on a small hill. And we enjoyed climbing there. It was really a cool and comfortable place. There was also a small river near the temple. We went on a boat there. Then, we had our lunch and returned home in the evening. I really had a great time. We were very happy.

#### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The temple was very .....  
 a happy      b small      c old      d tall
- They took some ..... and fresh juice with them.  
 a books      b food      c pens      d paper
- The underlined word "it" related to the .....  
 a temple      b picnic      c father      d river

#### B- Answer the following questions:

- Where was the temple?
- When did they return home?

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

- traveling - to London - you - Are - tomorrow?
- have - a lot - of - We - candles.
- I'm - surprised - you - to - see - ,Farida.

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- If you feel tired, you can ..... (went) to bed early.
- My sisters are ..... (cook) some food.

## Tests

### Punctuate the following:

### صع علامات الترقيم للأثني:

ahmed and tamer are good friends.

**Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:** ب. اتمل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

اكتب أمل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

To your friend Mona telling her about your **last birthday party**. Your name is Nadia and your email address is `nadia@email.com` and your friend's email is `mona@email.com`

ride

- sending invitations. - birthday cake.

[illegible]

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Sharm El-Sheikh is a town in

- ☐ a Egypt      ☐ b China      ☐ c Scotland      ☐ d Italy

2. You can swim in the \_\_\_\_\_ blue sea with your friends.

- ☐ a clean      ☐ b cool      ☐ c clear      ☐ d cold

3. You also can relax on the \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a peach      ☐ b beach      ☐ c park      ☐ d sand

4. You can go quad biking in the \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a sea      ☐ b lake      ☐ c river      ☐ d desert

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We can \_\_\_\_\_ the souks to see what's new there.

- ☐ a take      ☐ b choose      ☐ c go      ☐ d explore

2. She went on a \_\_\_\_\_ by sea.

- ☐ a flight      ☐ b voyage      ☐ c hike      ☐ d climb

3. My community is the people who live in my \_\_\_\_\_.

- ☐ a school      ☐ b club      ☐ c neighborhood      ☐ d roof

4. People buy and \_\_\_\_\_ things at the market.

- ☐ a grow      ☐ b make      ☐ c sell      ☐ d plant

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

candles - presents - cakes - old - ages

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make birthday <sup>1</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ for our children and put <sup>2</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ on them to show their <sup>3</sup> \_\_\_\_\_. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get <sup>4</sup> \_\_\_\_\_.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Ali is inviting his mom to go to his school's Mother's Day celebration. At his school, they are organizing a special day for the event on Saturday March 21<sup>st</sup>.

## Tests

Ali and his friend Ahmed are helping to get the place ready. Ali is hanging up the streamers, blowing up the balloons, and decorating the place. He is sending the invitations to all his friends and their moms to come to the celebration. Ahmed is making a playlist on his phone for the event.

### A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The celebration is happening in the month of ....  
**a** March                      **b** February                      **c** January                      **d** October
2. Ali is sending the ..... to all his friends.  
**a** streamers                      **b** balloons                      **c** invitations                      **d** phones
3. .... is making a playlist on his phone.  
**a** Ali                      **b** Ahmed                      **c** Aser                      **d** Mom

### B- Answer the following questions:

4. What does the underlined pronoun "He" refer to?
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. claws - have - **Cats** - sharp - and teeth.
2. weather - **The** - is - today - sunny
3. is - famous - Polo - **Why** - Marco?

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This is the shirt ..... (**who**) I wear to work.
2. We ..... (**go**) on vacation last week.

### 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لآتي:

we work in the community garden



- 8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب مفرقة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن.

"My school"

Guiding words

IT building - a lot of benches

## 9

إدارة شمال الاسماعيلية التعليمية

- 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Cats are my favorite ...

- a** animals      **b** birds      **c** reptiles      **d** insects

2. Cats use their claws when they are .....

- a** happy      **b** sad      **c** tired      **d** scared

3. They are beautiful with ..... fur.

- a** hard      **b** soft      **c** bad      **d** no

4. They are ..... and calm.

- a** messy      **b** ugly      **c** dirty      **d** clean

- 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A lot of local ..... in Aswan work in tourism.

- a** residents      **b** tourists      **c** farmers      **d** doctors

2. Let's go quad ..... in the Giza desert.

- a** swimming      **b** biking      **c** playing      **d** running

3. We can ride ..... across the desert.

- a** ships      **b** boats      **c** dromedaries      **d** shops

4. I always send ..... to my friends to come to my party.

- a** celebration      **b** vacation      **c** invitation      **d** organization

## Tests

### 3 Read and complete with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

plant - chemical

Helping the environment is very important. We can do this if we **1** ..... more trees. Some **2** ..... are the **3** ..... of the **4** ..... to make the plants grow well.

### 4 Read the text and complete the gaps: اقرأ القطعة واكمل الفراغات:

Ibn Battuta is one of the greatest explorers in history. He lived during the 14th century. He was born in Morocco and he wanted to explore the world to visit the important Muslim cities. He started his journey at the age of 21 and he visited places like Egypt, India, China, and many more. He used to travel by camel, boat, and walked long distances. His travels and writing helped us understand and learn about different places in the world. We also learned to be brave and curious to reach our dreams.

#### A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ibn Battuta started his journey when he was .....  
**a** 21                      **b** 29                      **c** 75                      **d** 14
- In his journey, he used .....  
**a** cars                      **b** train                      **c** planes                      **d** camels
- The underlined word it refers to .....  
**a** Ibn Battuta                      **b** the journey                      **c** the camel                      **d** Egypt

#### B- Answer the following questions

- Why did Ibn Battuta want to explore the world?
- What do we learn from Ibn Battuta's journeys?

### 5 Put the word in the box in order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الفراغ بالترتيب الصحيح:

- birthday - **When** .....
- decided to - her - **Fatima** - fear - far .....
- explorer - Italian - **Marco Polo** .....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ وكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- This is the street **(who)** my uncle lives.
- How **(much)** pens do you have?

**7 Write the following:**

صح ما مات لبرعم للآتي:

what an adventure

**8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة بـ ٥٠ كلمة عن:

**Guiding questions**

- What did I do?
- What did I see there?

**Test 10**

إدارة شرق التعليم

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I saw some \_\_\_\_\_ and calm animals.

**a** heavy **b** sad **c** clean **d** bad

2. Their \_\_\_\_\_ is nice to touch.

**a** fur **b** hair **c** tail **d** eye

3. Rana thinks cats are the best \_\_\_\_\_.

**a** streamers **b** streamers **c** plants **d** pets

4. Cats make Rana feel \_\_\_\_\_.

**a** happy **b** happy **c** clever **d** nervous

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I need \_\_\_\_\_ to wash my hair.

**a** soap **b** toothpaste **c** shampoo **d** cream

## Tests

2. Jana is .....; she is tidy and careful.

- ☐ a shy                      ☐ b messy                      ☐ c nervous                      ☐ d organized

3. We play basketball and handball during ..... lessons.

- ☐ a science                      ☐ b IT                      ☐ c French                      ☐ d physical education

4. Salem ..... a trip every year.

- ☐ a takes                      ☐ b rides                      ☐ c sails                      ☐ d writes

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**vegetables - sell - block - community - chemicals**

Nada visits her uncle every week. She likes to help him at his ① ..... garden. It's a big green space on the roof of his apartment ② ..... The people who work there are his neighbors. They eat the fruit and ③ ..... they grow. They sometimes ④ ..... them. Nada thinks that the community garden is a good idea because it keeps the air clean in the city.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

Hello, I'm Ali. Yesterday was my mother's birthday. My family gave her an exciting birthday party because she always helps and supports us. Mom does her best to make our family happy. My brother Omar, hung up the streamers with the help of my cousin Salem. My dad blew up the balloons and helped mom decorate the cake. On the other hand, my sister Lara made a playlist on her phone. She chose my mother's favorite songs. My aunt let off the fireworks when it got dark. It was an amazing birthday party which showed our love to mom.

#### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about .....

- ☐ a mom's new job                      ☐ b an exam night  
☐ c a strange night                      ☐ d mom's birthday party

2. The underlined word "amazing" means .....

- ☐ a wonderful                      ☐ b bad                      ☐ c terrible                      ☐ d sad

3. Lara made a ..... on her phone.

- ☐ a balloon                      ☐ b candle                      ☐ c playlist                      ☐ d firework

#### B- Answer the following questions:

4. Why did the family give mom a birthday party?

5. Summarize the text in two sentences.



### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. happy - Ahmed - was - very - Cairo - in. ....

2. surprised - to - see - you - I - am. ....

3. story - do - Which - like - to read - you? .....

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Dalia is the girl . (when) sits next to me.

2. Did you ..... (played) well?

### 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

ali visited his grandma on saturday.



### 8 Write an email of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب إيميل من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

To tell your friend Sara about your vacation plans. Your name is Mona and your email address is Mona@email.com Your friend's email is Sara@email.com.

#### Guiding questions

- The places you are going to visit.
- What you are going to do?

| New Message   |       |    |
|---|-------|---|
| To  | ..... | Cc Bcc  |
| From  | ..... |   |
| Subject   | ..... |   |
| <div> <div>.....</div> <div>.....</div> <div>.....</div> <div>.....</div> <div>.....</div> <div>.....</div> <div>.....</div> </div> |       |   |

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن الاجتماع آخر الولاية



1. Asser is \_\_\_\_\_ years old.  
 a nine                      b six                      c seven                      d twelve
2. He goes to school .....  
 a on foot                      b by bus                      c by taxi                      d bike
3. Asser's favorite subject is .....  
 a English                      b science                      c math                      d Arabic
4. He wants to be ..... when he is older.  
 a a teacher                      b a doctor                      c a student                      d an engineer

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We use natural ..... to grow organic food.  
 a roof                      b fertilizer                      c bird                      d candy
2. My sister is never ..... She is calm and relaxed.  
 a friendly                      b nervous                      c messy                      d kind
3. It's Nesma's birthday party. I'm hanging up the .....  
 a invitations                      b fireworks                      c playlists                      d streamers
4. .... are people you invite to your home.  
 a Guests                      b Noodles                      c Scissors                      d Fireworks

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

مراً وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

windows - biking - take - tourists - interesting

Sharm El-Sheikh is an amazing holiday destination. It's an ① \_\_\_\_\_ and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea. Many ② \_\_\_\_\_ like to visit it because there are lots of things to see and do. They can go quad ③ \_\_\_\_\_ in the desert. They can swim in the sea. They can also relax on the beach and ④ \_\_\_\_\_ photos.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: امراً القطعة واحب عن الأسئلة:

My uncle gave me an old book which tells interesting information about some places in Egypt. I will tell you about some of them. St Catherine's Mountain is the highest mountain in Egypt. It's about 2600 meters high. The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It's about 6600 kilometers long. The Great Pyramid at Giza is one of the oldest buildings in the world. Scientists think it's very heavy. They think that it is the heaviest building in Egypt.

#### A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The River Nile is ..... long.
 

|                                |                           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>a</b> 2600 meters           | <b>b</b> 6600 kilometers  |
| <b>c</b> six million kilograms | <b>d</b> 5000 centimeters |
- The Great Pyramid is in .....
 

|                |                |               |               |
|----------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| <b>a</b> Aswan | <b>b</b> Sinai | <b>c</b> Giza | <b>d</b> Siwa |
|----------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
- ..... think that the Great Pyramid is the heaviest building in Egypt.
 

|                     |                            |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>a</b> Scientists | <b>b</b> Ancient Egyptians |
| <b>c</b> My father  | <b>d</b> My uncle          |

#### B- Answer the following questions:

- What does the old book tell you?
- What is the highest mountain in Egypt?

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- play - you - do - often - How - football?
- are - you - when - study - hungry - Don't .
- studying - is - Hatem - exams - his - for.

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- This is the street ..... (who) my uncle lives.
- Hani didn't ..... (went) to the station yesterday.

## Tests

### 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

can you blow up some balloons

### 8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Animals in the forest

#### Guiding questions

- What are these animals?
- What do they eat?

## 12

إدارة النوبارية التعليمية

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. Elephants are the ..... land animals.

- ☐ a thinnest      ☐ b smallest      ☐ c largest      ☐ d tallest

2. Elephants can be as heavy as a .....

- ☐ a train      ☐ b car      ☐ c bus      ☐ d truck

3. Elephants have long .....

- ☐ a arms      ☐ b eyes      ☐ c trunks      ☐ d tooth

4. Elephants love to eat ..... and grass.

- ☐ a leaves      ☐ b eggplants      ☐ c oranges      ☐ d wheat

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Our ..... is on the sixteenth floor, so we have a great view of the city.

- ☐ a apartment      ☐ b lock      ☐ c black      ☐ d brake

2. People who are ..... work for no money.  
☐ a firefighter      ☐ b volunteers      ☐ c bloggers      ☐ d engineers
3. .... are people you invite to your home.  
☐ a Fireworks      ☐ b Guests      ☐ c Parents      ☐ d Teachers
4. Ali has worked as a teacher for seven years. He has good ..... in teaching.  
☐ a experience      ☐ b accident      ☐ c travel      ☐ d trip

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**Festival - block - Fridays - cleaning - local**

Hanan asks Hoda to go to her house tomorrow but Hoda goes to help her aunt on ① ..... They work in a community garden on the roof of an apartment ② ..... They grow vegetables and fruit for people in the ③ ..... Hoda thinks that the community garden is a good idea for ④ ..... the air in the city.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they are the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur, which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People also say that when you play with a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for you and make you laugh.

#### A- Choose the correct answer from a b c or d

1. Cats are ..... friendly.  
☐ a never      ☐ b rarely      ☐ c usually      ☐ d sometimes
2. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to .....  
☐ a people      ☐ b pets      ☐ c claws      ☐ d cats
3. Cats are ..... animals.  
☐ a clean      ☐ b noisy      ☐ c dirty      ☐ d lazy

#### B- Answer the following questions:

4. Why do cats use their claws?
5. Why do you cats think cats are the best pets?

## Tests

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. in - our cousin - **We** - visit - Aswan.

2. make - going to - **Dalia** - is - a playlist.

3. was - **Marco Polo** - explorer - an Italian.

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He is ..... (**interesting**) in reading.

2. Sara is the girl ..... (**which**) sits next to me.

### 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

where did Injy go to on vacation

### 8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب مقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your pet

Guiding words

clean and independent - soft fur



### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



- Ali visits grandparents in .....  
☐ a October      ☐ b May      ☐ c June      ☐ d July
- Ali goes ..... with his grandpa.  
☐ a swimming      ☐ b running      ☐ c fishing      ☐ d walking
- Ali plays football with his .....  
☐ a friends      ☐ b father      ☐ c brother      ☐ d parent
- He sometimes helps his ..... in the kitchen.  
☐ a father      ☐ b sister      ☐ c grandma      ☐ d friends

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- People who are ..... work for no money.  
☐ a firefighters      ☐ b bloggers      ☐ c volunteers      ☐ d doctors
- Salma is ..... up the balloons for her sister's birthday.  
☐ a blowing      ☐ b eating      ☐ c sending      ☐ d drinking
- The girl is ..... She never shares anything with others.  
☐ a messy      ☐ b selfish      ☐ c friendly      ☐ d happy
- Mr Ahmed is the teacher ..... teaches us English.  
☐ a where      ☐ b which      ☐ c when      ☐ d who

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**friendly - walk - independent - fur - pet**

Cats are my favorite animal. They are beautiful with soft <sup>1</sup> ..... which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually <sup>2</sup> ..... They like people but they're <sup>3</sup> ..... You don't need to take them for a <sup>4</sup> .....

## Tests

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

In a village, there live a giant who has a wonderful garden. In this garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy. But the selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden. So one day he built a big wall around it. Now the children never come there to play.

#### A- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The moral of the lesson is not to be .....  
☐ a kind      ☐ b selfish      ☐ c fast      ☐ d colorful
2. Children visit the garden .....  
☐ a on weekends    ☐ b twice a week    ☐ c every day    ☐ d twice a day
3. The underlined word "lovely" means .....  
☐ a fast      ☐ b beautiful      ☐ c boring      ☐ d scary

#### B- Answer the following questions:

4. Why did the giant build a wall around the garden?
5. Do you think the giant likes children?

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. summer - in - The Weather - is - sunny - always.
2. sister - How - many - you - do - have?
3. a lot of - have - I - books - my room - in.

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. What ..... (are) your favorite food?
2. I like football ..... (and) I don't like tennis.



**7 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i am excited about my vacation

**8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقره إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

**A trip down the Nile**

**Guiding words**

- felucca on the Nile
- enjoyed the trip

**14**

إدارة ناصر التعليمية

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

لص الاستماع احر الكواسه



1. Samy's family went to .....  
☐ a Luxor                      ☐ b Cairo                      ☐ c Aswan                      ☐ d Giza
2. Samy's family went there by .....  
☐ a ship                      ☐ b bus                      ☐ c car                      ☐ d train
3. Last ..... Samy had great fun.  
☐ a year                      ☐ b month                      ☐ c week                      ☐ d day
4. Samy visited the Egyptian .....  
☐ a School                      ☐ b Club                      ☐ c Park                      ☐ d Museum

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We ..... tomatoes, peppers, onions, and lettuce.  
☐ a help                      ☐ b plant                      ☐ c sleep                      ☐ d go

## Tests

2. I like to \_\_\_\_\_ new places, so I always travel to many countries.  
**a** explore                      **b** write                      **c** eat                      **d** ask
3. I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ at the beach.  
**a** city                      **b** relax                      **c** uniform                      **d** saw
4. Koshari is a \_\_\_\_\_ Egyptian meal.  
**a** slow                      **b** peace                      **c** modern                      **d** traditional

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**car - Fridays - community - city - fruit**

Nour asks Mariam to go to her house tomorrow, but Mariam goes to help her aunt on **1** \_\_\_\_\_. They work in a **2** \_\_\_\_\_ garden on the roof of an apartment block. They grow vegetables and **3** \_\_\_\_\_ for people in the local area, and sometimes they sell them, too. Mariam thinks the community garden is a good idea because the plants also help to clean the air in the **4** \_\_\_\_\_.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Salma. I moved to a nice city with a new school. I was nervous and shy on the first day at school, but I met Lara. She helped me get to know the school. She took me around the school and showed me where my classrooms are. She also stayed with me at the break. She helped me get the books and the worksheets I need. She's a very kind person. Now I feel happy and I love my new school.

#### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "nice" means \_\_\_\_\_.  
**a** bad                      **b** ugly                      **c** tall                      **d** wonderful
2. Salma moved to a new city with a new \_\_\_\_\_.  
**a** house                      **b** restaurant                      **c** hospital                      **d** school
3. Lara \_\_\_\_\_ with Salma at the break.  
**a** sang                      **b** stayed                      **c** taught                      **d** knew

#### B- Answer the following questions:

4. Summarize the main idea of the text in a sentence.

5. How does Salma feel now?



**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. travel - How - you - did - there?

2. are - What - you - doing - now?

3. palace - lives in - Ramy - with - a big - his parents.

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The film ..... (who) I saw yesterday was great.

2. We are ..... (eat) fish now.

**7 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i live in a nice city

**8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقره إيشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

**Your birthday**

**Guiding phrases**

- hang up the streamers
- decorate the birthday cake



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. The giant has a big .....  
 a house                      b farm                      c garden                      d lake
2. He doesn't allow the ..... to play in his garden.  
 a children                      b animals                      c birds                      d fish
3. The giant is .....  
 a shy                      b polite                      c nervous                      d selfish
4. He builds a ..... around his garden.  
 a castle                      b wall                      c flat                      d home

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We don't use ..... when we grow organic food.  
 a fertilizers                      b chemicals                      c water                      d seeds
2. We do science experiments in the .....  
 a laboratory                      b playground                      c gymnasium                      d IT building
3. I made a/an ..... of the best 20 songs nowadays.  
 a cake                      b firework                      c playlist                      d invitation
4. There is some ..... in the fridge.  
 a soup                      b tomatoes                      c beans                      d cats

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

played - enjoyed - liked - went - movie

Yesterday was a fun day. We ① ..... to the beach and swam in the sea. We ate pizza and we ② ..... handball. After that, we went to the cinema to watch a ③ ..... We watched a funny movie and we ate popcorn. We ④ ..... our time.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I traveled to Egypt last year with my family to see the Giza Pyramids. A guide helped us to explore the Great Pyramid of Khufu because we were amazed by the ancient culture. We looked at the hieroglyphics inside and discovered that the ancient Egyptians were able to build these huge pyramids. We also went to the Sphinx and learned about its importance. We were very excited and hoped to visit more historical sites next time.

#### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined pronoun "We" refers to .  
☐ a the family      ☐ b Pyramids      ☐ c the Sphinx      ☐ d hieroglyphics
- A ... helps us explore the Great Pyramid of Khufu.  
☐ a doctor      ☐ b teacher      ☐ c guide      ☐ d nurse
- The trip was very .  
☐ a boring      ☐ b exciting      ☐ c funny      ☐ d tiring

#### B- Answer the following questions:

- When did you travel to Egypt?
- What did you learn about the Sphinx?

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- the community - Do - work - garden - you - in?
- favorite - Football - game - my - is.
- go - We - to - the - want - beach - to.

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- The person . (which) is standing there is my uncle.
- How . . (old) do you watch TV? Three times a week.

\_\_\_\_\_

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

[illegible]

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

“Your birthday party”

**balloons - decorate**

**balloons - decorate**

إدارة طها التعليمية

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



**a** last week      **b** last month      **c** last year      **d** last Friday

**a** shy      **b** polite      **c** clever      **d** calm

**a** Sherif      **b** Ahmed      **c** Nabil      **d** Essam

**a** A club      **b** A hospital      **c** A supermarket      **d** A school

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We always buy vegetables at the .....  
**a** market                      **b** office                      **c** club                      **d** hospital
- My friend is very ..... She is always helpful, too.  
**a** nervous                      **b** careless                      **c** kind                      **d** messy
- My sister can ..... invitations online.  
**a** decorate                      **b** send                      **c** hang                      **d** sing
- Tamer will ..... photos for his school project.  
**a** take                      **b** ride                      **c** go                      **d** climb

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

holiday - choose - places - time - noodles

We like vacations. We should plan to go to good **1** ..... We can **2** ..... the cheapest and quietest place to spend our **3** ..... We should think how to get to this place and the suitable **4** ..... for us.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Egypt is a country in North Africa. Most of Egypt is desert. Egypt has the longest river in the world, the Nile. Tourists come to visit Egypt from all over the world. They come to enjoy its sunny weather. They go to Luxor and Aswan to see the great monuments. They can also visit the Pyramid and the Sphinx in Giza. They can take a lot of photos of the Pyramids. Hurghada is a famous town for tourists. They can do many activities there. They can swim and go diving in the sea. They can relax on the beach.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

- Egypt is a country in ..... Africa.  
**a** north                      **b** south                      **c** east                      **d** west
- Egypt has the longest ..... in the world.  
**a** desert                      **b** river                      **c** sea                      **d** lake
- ..... is a famous town for tourists.  
**a** Cairo                      **b** Sohag                      **c** Hurghada                      **d** Minia

## Tests

### B- Answer the following questions:

4. What can tourists do in Hurghada?

5. Why do tourists go to Aswan and Luxor?

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. school - proud - are - We - our - of.

2 exciting - Football - more - tennis - is - than.

3 go - We - to - the - want - beach - to.

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. She always (go) to school early.

2. We are (play) tennis now.

### 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

i went to Alexandria last summer

### 8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your vacation trip

#### Guiding questions

1 - Where did you go?

2 - How long were you there?

**1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة



- My friend Asser is in .....  
☐ a Cairo      ☐ b Giza      ☐ c Alexandria      ☐ d Aswan
- They had lunch at .....  
☐ a home      ☐ b a restaurant      ☐ c a garden      ☐ d a hotel
- We took photos in the .....  
☐ a hotel      ☐ b desert      ☐ c theme park      ☐ d restaurant
- Asser will visit me in Cairo .....  
☐ a next week      ☐ b on Friday      ☐ c tomorrow      ☐ d next year

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- The special green areas help people enjoy .....  
☐ a projects      ☐ b nature      ☐ c organization      ☐ d location
- A ..... person is helpful and nice to others.  
☐ a friendly      ☐ b nervous      ☐ c messy      ☐ d shy
- There are a lot of ..... to help in the project.  
☐ a perfumes      ☐ b guests      ☐ c chemicals      ☐ d volunteers
- Many ..... come to my birthday party.  
☐ a pets      ☐ b guess      ☐ c guests      ☐ d games

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

play - line - apartment - areas - of - out

I'm Hala. I'm from Hurghada. I moved to Cairo with my family. Our ① ..... is on the 7th floor. There are lots of green ② ..... here. We go ③ ..... every Friday to enjoy. We go to a nice park where we can ④ .....



## Tests

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Talia. I live in Aswan. Today is my birthday. My family made me a great surprise. Today, I had an amazing experience. We went on a felucca on the River Nile. The weather was great and the sun was shining. A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, Kareem was very strong. The trip was amazing. We had lunch in a beautiful garden by Nile. We went back home late at ten o'clock. I was very happy.

#### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Talia had a/an ..... experience.

- ☐ a boring      ☐ b bad      ☐ c difficult      ☐ d amazing

2. Talia went on a ..... on the Nile.

- ☐ a bus      ☐ b car      ☐ c felucca      ☐ d ship

3. Felucca is a ..... Egyptian boat.

- ☐ a new      ☐ b frightened      ☐ c traditional      ☐ d modern

#### B- Answer the following questions:

4. How was the trip?

5. Who was the captain of the boat?

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. yesterday - didn't - The ship - the - port - leave.

2. you - go - How often - do - swimming?

3. Egypt - The weather - always - is - sunny - in.



**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Tamer and Alaa ... (are) at school yesterday.

2. I don't ..... (visiting) my uncle on Saturday.

**7 Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

Marco polo visited China in the 13<sup>th</sup> century

**8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة إرشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

Your favorite place

**Guiding questions**

- What activities can you do there?
- Why do you like it?

**Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:**

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكراسة

1. Our ..... is on the sixteenth floor.

- ☐ a apartment      ☐ b house      ☐ c farm      ☐ d bank

2. Is that the house ... .. your uncle lives?

- ☐ a who      ☐ b which      ☐ c how      ☐ d where

3. Ahmed and Omar ..... in my class last year.

- ☐ a is      ☐ b are      ☐ c were      ☐ d was

4. My school is great ..... It's far from my house.

- ☐ a because      ☐ b but      ☐ c and      ☐ d so

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The people you invite to your home are your .....

- ☐ a subjects      ☐ b ghosts      ☐ c hosts      ☐ d guests

2. Mini forest ..... help to look after the trees.

- ☐ a doctors      ☐ b volunteers      ☐ c teachers      ☐ d tourists

3. Mona is very ..... She shows respect to everyone.

- ☐ a shy      ☐ b messy      ☐ c polite      ☐ d nervous

4. She decides to ..... her fear.

- ☐ a play      ☐ b see      ☐ c make      ☐ d face

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

independent - claws - fur - scared - walk

Cats are my favorite pets. They have soft ① ..... which is nice to touch. Cats like people but they're ② ..... Cats have sharp ③ ..... and teeth, but they only use them when they are ④ .....

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies and ate well. Ancient Egyptians ate a lot of vegetables and fruits. They used wheat and barley to make bread. Most people in **Ancient** Egypt only ate a little meat. They probably ate a few fish and birds. They also ate some eggs and cheese. They used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks. Some families used spices and herbs to make their cooking taste better.

المتن يتحدث عن حياة المصريين القدماء.

1. The main idea of the text is about \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a Ancient Egyptians

☐ b Ancient buildings

☐ c the River Nile

☐ d Ancient Chinese

2. Ancient Egyptians used \_\_\_\_\_ and wheat to make bread.

☐ a barley

☐ b metal

☐ c paper

☐ d eggs

3. The opposite of the underlined word "**Ancient**" is \_\_\_\_\_.

☐ a noisy

☐ b modern

☐ c lovely

☐ d difficult

**B- Answer the following questions.**

4. What did Ancient Egyptians use to make their cooking taste better?

5. How did Ancient Egyptians make cakes?

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. play - you - do - How often - football?

2. summer - in - The weather - is usually - sunny.

3. is - apartment - Our - on - seventh - the - floor.

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

امرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. How \_\_\_\_\_ (many) eggs are in the recipe?

2. We don't have \_\_\_\_\_ (some) water.



## Tests:

### 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

ahmed doesn't have any grapes

### 8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إسشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

A trip by a felucca

#### Guiding phrases

- traditional felucca
- amazing experience

19

إدارة كوم أمبو التعليمية

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

نحن الاستماع آخر الكراسة



1. Basel is ..... and helpful.

- ☐ a shy                      ☐ b messy                      ☐ c kind                      ☐ d nervous

2. He visited his grandparents in the .....

- ☐ a winter                      ☐ b summer                      ☐ c fall                      ☐ d spring

3. He went ..... with his grandpa.

- ☐ a fishing                      ☐ b swimming                      ☐ c running                      ☐ d walking

4. He helped his grandma in the .....

- ☐ a living room                      ☐ b bedroom                      ☐ c bathroom                      ☐ d kitchen

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:** اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. A lot of local \_\_\_\_\_ in Aswan work in tourism.  
☐ a residents      ☐ b tourists      ☐ c farmers      ☐ d fisherman
2. My friend Magdy is good at math, he is \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a messy      ☐ b bad      ☐ c clever      ☐ d ugly
3. You can open the \_\_\_\_\_, it's very hot.  
☐ a watch      ☐ b window      ☐ c wolf      ☐ d west
4. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ up the streamers for my sister's birthday.  
☐ a blowing      ☐ b cutting      ☐ c hanging      ☐ d writing

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

**clean - walk - independent - fur - pet**

Cats are my favorite animals. They are beautiful with soft **1** \_\_\_\_\_ which is nice in touch. They are **2** \_\_\_\_\_ and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are **3** \_\_\_\_\_. We don't need to take them for a **4** \_\_\_\_\_ every day.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday Ali didn't go to school because it was a holiday. He and his friend Marwan walked to the zoo. It was a sunny day. They arrived at seven in the morning. They saw many animals. They liked the giraffe but they didn't like the lions. They saw monkeys and gave them some bananas. Monkeys are funny animals. They had mango juice and ate sandwiches there. They left the zoo at three o'clock in the afternoon. They were very happy. They went back home by bus.

**A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The text is about a visit to the \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a museum      ☐ b pyramids      ☐ c zoo      ☐ d park
2. Ali and Marwan went to the zoo \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a by bus      ☐ b by train      ☐ c on foot      ☐ d by car
3. They liked the \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a giraffe      ☐ b dog      ☐ c lion      ☐ d tiger

## Tests

4. Why didn't they go to school yesterday?

5. When did they leave the zoo?

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. go - to- park - Let's - theme - the.

2. can - What - you - Sharm El-Sheikh - at - see?

3. make - going to - Mona - is - playlist - a.

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He usually ---- (go) to school by bus.

2. We had a science class .. (at) Monday.

### 7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

marco Polo was a famous explorer

### 8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٥٠) كلمة عن:

our school

#### Guiding phrases

- big and clean
- classrooms and playground

### 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:



- Basel and Hazem are \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a brothers      ☐ b teachers      ☐ c friends      ☐ d vets
- They are going to go quad biking in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a sea      ☐ b desert      ☐ c river      ☐ d lake
- The theme park is in \_\_\_\_\_ city.  
☐ a Cairo      ☐ b Luxor      ☐ c Aswan      ☐ d Giza
- They want to ride on a \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a rollercoaster      ☐ b camel      ☐ c horse      ☐ d bus

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Sara is very \_\_\_\_\_. She likes talking to people.  
☐ a messy      ☐ b shy      ☐ c friendly      ☐ d nervous
- They prefer to eat \_\_\_\_\_ food with no chemicals.  
☐ a bad      ☐ b polluted      ☐ c dirty      ☐ d organic
- You can go quad \_\_\_\_\_ in the desert.  
☐ a fishing      ☐ b swimming      ☐ c biking      ☐ d playing
- Although she was afraid of heights, she tried to face her \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a trip      ☐ b secret      ☐ c fear      ☐ d view

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من الإطار:

do - candles - present - age - make

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. In Egypt, we usually ① \_\_\_\_\_ cakes for our children and put ② \_\_\_\_\_ on them to show their ③ \_\_\_\_\_. The children usually get a ④ \_\_\_\_\_ too.

## Tests

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة.

We need some wax for making the candles. Palm wax from Egyptian palm trees makes really nice candles. We need some perfume oil. We squeeze in about 40 drops of this oil to make them fragrant. We can take flowers and press them on the tops of candles. We need the pens and one wick for each candle. We use some popsicle sticks to hold the wick up. We heat the wax to melt it, then stir it well.

#### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of the underlined word "nice" means ....  
☐ a good                      ☐ b high                      ☐ c bad                      ☐ d beautiful
2. The main idea of the text is about .....  
☐ a making bread                      ☐ b making paper  
☐ c making candles                      ☐ d making food
3. We use some ..... to hold the wick up.  
☐ a pens                      ☐ b popsicle sticks                      ☐ c metals                      ☐ d glasses

#### B- Answer the following questions:

4. What do we need to make candles?
5. How many wicks do we need for each candle?

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملا:

1. rains - It - the Western Desert - rarely - in.
2. is - She - science - in - interested.
3. did - you - What - on - the weekend - do?



**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**

امراً واكلم . بطارية . عشت . ماسا . قوالب :

1. The tablet (switch) off if you press this button.
2. Is Ali the boy ..... (which) lives in your building?

**7 Punctuate the following:**

صغ علامه . سببه . ع

fares was angry with his brother yesterday

**8 Write a paragraph of Fifty (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقره اشدته من ( ) فته

**"A place you like visiting"**

**Guiding questions**

- Why do you like it?
- What can you do there?



**Read and complete the dialog:**

أقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

**onions - community garden - to come - space - do**

**Abbas** : Do you have any information about my uncle's ❶ ?

**Asmaa** : No, I don't. What's that?

**Abbas** : It's a big green ❷ on the roof of his apartment block.

**Asmaa** : What things do you ❸ there?

**Abbas** : We grow a lot of things; tomatoes, peppers and ❹ .

**Asmaa** : That's interesting. OK, I'd like ❺ .



**Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with a correct word:**

أقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المختلفة واستبدلها بكلمة صحيحة:

|  |        |        |         |          |       |
|--|--------|--------|---------|----------|-------|
|  | grapes | onions | bananas | mangoes  | ----  |
|  | here   | hare   | monkey  | elephant | ----- |
|  | lake   | river  | stream  | desert   | ----- |
|  | oil    | ticket | juice   | money    | ----- |
|  | track  | truck  | bus     | car      | ----- |



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The ----- is at the top of a building.

- ☐ a roof      ☐ b loaf      ☐ c floor      ☐ d road

2. We ----- do sports in the morning. We like that very much.

- ☐ a never      ☐ b usually      ☐ c rarely      ☐ d usual

3. Zeinab is ----- . She shows respect to everyone.

- ☐ a shy      ☐ b nervous      ☐ c polite      ☐ d angry

4. The tablet switches off if you ----- this button.

- ☐ a press      ☐ b pressing      ☐ c will press      ☐ d presses



5. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim \_\_\_\_\_ spring.  
☐ a at                      ☐ b in                      ☐ c on                      ☐ d of
6. Mom \_\_\_\_\_ the cake now.  
☐ a made                      ☐ b is making                      ☐ c makes                      ☐ d make
7. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a type of earth that is sticky when it is wet.  
☐ a tool                      ☐ b mystery                      ☐ c clay                      ☐ d pen
8. Hani didn't \_\_\_\_\_ on the palace tour with the guide.  
☐ a go                      ☐ b went                      ☐ c goes                      ☐ d going
9. The king is sitting on the throne and wearing a \_\_\_\_\_ on his head.  
☐ a crown                      ☐ b scepter                      ☐ c dress                      ☐ d shirt
10. Could you lend me \_\_\_\_\_ money, please?  
☐ a many                      ☐ b a few                      ☐ c some                      ☐ d a lot

 **Read the text and answer the questions:** اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Fatima's grandpa lives in a big city, on the 18<sup>th</sup> floor of an apartment block. Fatima used to be afraid of heights. She used to be afraid to look out of windows, because they were up so high. But her grandpa would sit by the window and point out all the interesting things in the city. Now Fatima likes to look out of her grandpa's windows. She can see the library, the train station and the park. She feels very grown up.

**A Answer the following questions**

1. What floor is the grandpa's apartment?
2. Why was Fatima afraid when she looked out of the windows?
3. What can Fatima see from the grandpa's windows?

**B: Choose the correct answer.**

4. Fatima's grandpa doesn't live in a \_\_\_\_\_ city.  
☐ a big                      ☐ b large                      ☐ c small                      ☐ d huge
5. The underlined word "interesting" means \_\_\_\_\_.  
☐ a boring                      ☐ b exciting                      ☐ c shy                      ☐ d messy

**5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. subject - What - good at - is - she?

2. any - Salma - isn't - cake - eating.

3. surprised - for - Are - the test - passing - you?

4. works - My brother - in - library - the.

5. the dentist - you - do - How - go - often - to?

**6 Write a short paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences about:**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من خمسة جمل عن:

**Tip for studying**

**Guiding words**

get up - study - revise - healthy food - breaks

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## 22

### محافظة القاهرة - إدارة حلوان التعليمية

امتحان طلاب الدمج

#### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Rana is ..... She always gets high marks.  
 a bad                      b clever                      c lazy                      d busy
2. The film was ..... I didn't like it.  
 a amazing                      b interesting                      c boring                      d fantastic
3. A giant is very .....  
 a small                      b tiny                      c big                      d short
4. We use natural ..... to grow organic food.  
 a tools                      b fertilizers                      c view                      d food
5. People should eat ..... food.  
 a healthy                      b unhealthy                      c fast                      d fat
6. Ali always ..... chess with his friends.  
 a plays                      b playing                      c play                      d cut
7. How ..... cups of coffee did he have?  
 a much                      b often                      c many                      d old
8. We ..... to the zoo yesterday.  
 a go                      b goes                      c going                      d went
9. What are you ..... ?  
 a do                      b does                      c doing                      d did
10. This is the house ..... I live.  
 a where                      b which                      c who                      d when

#### 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة و اجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Ali. I love my school very much. My school is next to my house. I go to school on foot. I go to school by myself. I go to school at seven o'clock. I study English, Arabic, math, science and art. My favorite subject is English. I want to be a doctor when I grow up. My school is clean and nice. I go home at two o'clock.

## Tests

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The text is a / an .....  
 a passage                      b email                      c letter                      d form
- Ali is a / an .....  
 a doctor                      b teacher                      c student                      d chef
- Ali's favorite subject is .....  
 a math                      b English                      c science                      d art
- Ali goes to school .....  
 a by bus                      b by car                      c by bike                      d on foot

## (B) Writing

### 3 Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b or c:

اختر الجمل الصحيحة

- decorating - They - are - house - the.  
 a They are decorating the house.                      b They house are decorating the.  
 c They are the house decorating.
- are - favorite - my - Cats - animals.  
 a Cats my animals favorite are.                      b Cats are my favorite animals.  
 c Cats animals are my favorite.

### 4 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

اختر ورتب العبارات الآتية لتكوين فقرة إنشائية:

|                                       |             |
|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| a She went to hospital.               | 1- (      ) |
| b The doctor gave her medicine there. | 2- (      ) |
| c My sister was sick.                 | 3- (      ) |
| d She is doing better today.          | 4- (      ) |

### 5 Choose the correct punctuated sentence from a, b or c:

اختر الجمل الصحيحة:

- egypt is in africa**
- a Egypt is in africa.                      b egypt is in Africa.                      c Egypt is in Africa.

# Listening Material



نصوص الاستماع الواردة في كراسة التدريبات

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة باسئلة الاستماع  
الواردة في كراسة التدريبات والاختبارات  
الخاصة باختبارات الشهور

## October test 1

Cats are nice animals. Cats are my favorite animals. Cats are beautiful with soft fur. They are clean and calm animals. Cats have sharp claws and teeth.

## October test 2

Asmaa and Hoda are friends. Hoda goes to help her aunt. They work in a community garden. The community is on the roof of an apartment block.

## November test 1

Today is my birthday. I'm with my friends at the carnival. There are many restaurants. There are places to eat and stores to buy. There are amazing rides like the rollercoaster.

## November test 2

I'm Samer. My father and I will go quad biking in the desert. The company is called Desert Adventure. The guide will meet us in the hotel at 9 am. We will be in a group of six. We will ride the quad bike for thirty minutes. We have to wear helmets.

# Listening Material



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة باسئلة الاستماع الواردة في الاختبارات

## General Tests

### Test 1

محافظة القاهرة / إدارة الزاوية التعليمية

#### - Listen and choose the correct answer:

Cats are my favorite animals. Cats are beautiful with soft fur. Cats are clean and calm animals. Cats have sharp claws and teeth. They use them when they are scared.

### Test 2

محافظة الجيزة / إدارة الحوامدية التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Injy was reading a travel diary about her family's vacation. The favorite thing about vacation was visiting the Marco polo Museum. Marco polo was an Italian explorer. Injy was amazed by how difficult the journey to China was in those days.

### Test 3

محافظة الفيوم / إدارة لها التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Ahmed was shy on his first day at school. Hassan was the friend who helped Ahmed. Hassan was clever at science. Ahmed enjoyed his first day at school.

## Test 4

محافظة المنوفية / إدارة السادات التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. We usually make birthday cakes for children. We put candles on cakes. children usually get a present, too. Birthdays are great times.

## Test 5

محافظة الشرقية / إدارة بلبيس التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

If you want to make soap, put the ingredients for your soap in a bowl. Heat the ingredients on a cooker. Next, stir the ingredients with a wooden spoon. You can add flower petals to make soap look smell lovely.

## Test 6

محافظة الغربية / إدارة شرق منشا التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Nardeen is a good girl. Nardeen is twelve years old. Nardeen lives with her family in Luxor. There are many historical places to visit in Luxor. A lot of tourists visit Luxor every year.

## Listening

### Test 7

محافظة الدقهلية / إدارة المطرية التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Nour asks Mariam to go to her house tomorrow. Mariam goes to help her aunt on Fridays. They grow vegetables and fruit in the garden. Mariam thinks the community garden is a good idea.

### Test 8

محافظة كفر الشيخ / إدارة مطوبس التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Sharm El-Sheikh is a great town. It is a town in Egypt. You can swim in the clear blue sea with your friends. You also can relax on the beach. You can go quad biking in the desert.

### Test 9

محافظة الاسماعيلية / إدارة شمال الاسماعيلية التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

I love cats very much. Cats are my favorite animals. Cats use their claws when they are scared. They are beautiful with soft fur. They are clean and calm animals. They are my best pets.

### Test 10

محافظة الغربية / إدارة شرق طنطا التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Rana likes cats. cats are clean and calm animal. Their hair is nice to touch. Rana thinks cats are the best pets. Cats make Rana feel happy.

### Test 11

محافظة مطروح / إدارة مطروح التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Asser is a good boy. Asser is nine years old. He goes to school by bus. Asser's favorite subject is math. He is clever. He wants to be an engineer when he is older.

### Test 12

محافظة البحيرة / إدارة الدوير التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Elephants are big animals. Elephants are the largest land animals. Elephants can be as heavy as a bus. Elephants have long trunks. Elephants love to eat leaves and grass.

### Test 13

محافظة الفيوم / إدارة طامية التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Ali visits grandparents in June. Ali goes fishing with his grandpa. Ali plays football with his friends. Ali sometimes helps his grandma in the kitchen.

### Test 14

محافظة بني سويف / إدارة ناصر التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Last week, Samy's family had great fun. Samy's family went to Cairo. Samy's family went there by train. Samy visited the Egyptian Museum.

### Test 15

محافظة أسيوط / إدارة منقوط التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

One day, there was a giant. The giant is selfish. He has a big garden. The giant doesn't allow the children to play in his garden. He builds a wall around his garden.

### Test 16

محافظة سوهاج / إدارة طما التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Nabil went to a new school last week. Nabil was shy. Essam helped Nabil know the school well. Essam was clever. Essam was good at math.

### Test 17

محافظة قنا / إدارة نجع حمادي التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

I am Amr. My friend Asser is in Alexandria. I visited him. We had lunch at a restaurant. We took photos in the theme park. Asser will visit me in Cairo next week.

### Test 18

محافظة الأقصر / إدارة الأقصر التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Our apartment is on the sixteenth floor. My school is great but it's far from my house. My friends Ahmed and Omar were in my class last year. This is the house where my uncle lives.

### Test 19

محافظة أسوان / إدارة كوم أمبو التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Basel is my friend. Basel is kind and helpful. Basel visited his grandparents in the summer. Basel went walking with his grandpa. Basel helped his grandma in the kitchen.

### Test 20

محافظة الوادي الجديد / إدارة الداخلة التعليمية

#### - Listen and circle the correct answer:

Basel and Hazem are friends. They are going to go quad biking in the desert. They want to ride on a rollercoaster. The theme park is in Giza.